ISO 20022

Multilateral Settlement - Maintenance 2023 - 2024

Message Definition Report - Part 2

Approved by the Payments SEG on 08 January 2024

This document provides details of the Message Definitions for Multilateral Settlement - Maintenance 2023 - 2024.

March 2024

Table of Contents

1   Message Set Overview

Introduction

This document describes the Multilateral Settlement message set. It includes the new version of the MessageDefinitions that have been added as part of the maintenance cycle 2023-2024 (See MCR #234) and approved by the Payments Standards Evaluation Group on 08 January 2024.

1.1   List of MessageDefinitions

The following table lists all MessageDefinitions described in this book.

MessageDefinition	Definition
admi.004.001.02 SystemEventNotificationV02	The SystemEventNotification message is sent by a central system to notify the occurrence of an event in a central system.
pacs.002.001.12 FIToFIPaymentStatusReportV12	The FIToFIPaymentStatusReport message is sent by an instructed agent to the previous party in the payment chain. It is used to inform this party about the positive or negative status of an instruction (either single or file). It is also used to report on a pending instruction.
pacs.029.001.02 MultilateralSettlementRequestV02	The MultilateralSettlementRequest message is sent from an instructing agent to a market infrastructure to settle obligations between their participants using accounts held in a settlement service. Usage: The MultilateralSettlementRequest message can contain one or more settlement instructions with multiple movements between accounts. By default, all movements present in an individual instruction shall be processed as a batch entry rather than a single entry per individual movement.

2   admi.004.001.02 SystemEventNotificationV02

2.1   MessageDefinition Functionality

Scope

The SystemEventNotification message is sent by a central system to notify the occurrence of an event in a central system.

Usage

The message can be used by a central settlement system to inform its participants of an event that is going to occur in the system, for instance that the system will be down at a certain time, etc.

Outline

The SystemEventNotificationV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 1 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. EventInformation

Detailed information about a system event.

2.2   Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <SysEvtNtfctn>	[1..1]			
	EventInformation *<EvtInf>*	[1..1]			4
	EventCode *<EvtCd>*	[1..1]	Text		5
	EventParameter *<EvtParam>*	[0..*]	Text		5
	EventDescription *<EvtDesc>*	[0..1]	Text		5
	EventTime *<EvtTm>*	[0..1]	DateTime		5

2.3   Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

2.3.1   EventInformation <EvtInf>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Detailed information about a system event.

EventInformation <EvtInf> contains the following **Event2** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EventCode *<EvtCd>*	[1..1]	Text		5
	EventParameter *<EvtParam>*	[0..*]	Text		5
	EventDescription *<EvtDesc>*	[0..1]	Text		5
	EventTime *<EvtTm>*	[0..1]	DateTime		5

2.3.1.1 EventCode <EvtCd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary code used to specify an event that occurred in a system.

Datatype: "Max4AlphaNumericText" on page 206

2.3.1.2 EventParameter <EvtParam>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Describes the parameters of an event which occurred in a system.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

2.3.1.3 EventDescription <EvtDesc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Free text used to describe an event which occurred in a system.

Datatype: "Max1000Text" on page 203

2.3.1.4 EventTime <EvtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the event occurred.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 200

3   pacs.002.001.12 FIToFIPaymentStatusReportV12

3.1   MessageDefinition Functionality

Scope

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReport message is sent by an instructed agent to the previous party in the payment chain. It is used to inform this party about the positive or negative status of an instruction (either single or file). It is also used to report on a pending instruction.

Usage

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReport message is exchanged between agents to provide status information about instructions previously sent. Its usage will always be governed by a bilateral agreement between the agents.

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReport message can be used to provide information about the status (e.g. rejection, acceptance) of a credit transfer instruction, a direct debit instruction, as well as other intra-agent instructions (for example FIToFIPaymentCancellationRequest).

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReport message refers to the original instruction(s) by means of references only or by means of references and a set of elements from the original instruction.

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReport message can be used in domestic and cross-border scenarios.

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReport may also be sent to the receiver of the payment in a real time payment scenario, as both sides of the transactions must be informed of the status of the transaction (for example either the beneficiary is credited, or the transaction is rejected).

Outline

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReportV12 MessageDefinition is composed of 4 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

   Set of characteristics shared by all individual transactions included in the status report message.

B. OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus

   Original group information concerning the group of transactions, to which the status report message refers to.

C. TransactionInformationAndStatus

   Information concerning the original transactions, to which the status report message refers.

D. SupplementaryData

   Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

3.2   Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <FIToFIPmtStsRpt>	[1..1]		C8, C9, C10, C11, C18, C19, C20, C27	
	GroupHeader *<GrpHdr>*	[1..1]			12
	MessageIdentification *<MsgId>*	[1..1]	Text		12
	CreationDateTime *<CreDtTm>*	[1..1]	DateTime		12
	InstructingAgent *<InstgAgt>*	[0..1]	±		12
	InstructedAgent *<InstdAgt>*	[0..1]	±		13
	OriginalBusinessQuery *<OrgnlBizQry>*	[0..1]	±		13
	OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus *<OrgnlGrpInfAndSts>*	[0..*]		C25, C17	13
	OriginalMessageIdentification *<OrgnlMsgId>*	[1..1]	Text		14
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification *<OrgnlMsgNmId>*	[1..1]	Text		14
	OriginalCreationDateTime *<OrgnlCreDtTm>*	[0..1]	DateTime		14
	OriginalNumberOfTransactions *<OrgnlNbOfTxs>*	[0..1]	Text		15
	OriginalControlSum *<OrgnlCtrlSum>*	[0..1]	Quantity		15
	GroupStatus *<GrpSts>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		15
	StatusReasonInformation *<StsRsnInf>*	[0..*]	±	C26	15
	NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus *<NbOfTxsPerSts>*	[0..*]	±		15
	TransactionInformationAndStatus *<TxInfAndSts>*	[0..*]			16
	StatusIdentification *<StsId>*	[0..1]	Text		16
	OriginalGroupInformation *<OrgnlGrpInf>*	[0..1]	±		17
	OriginalInstructionIdentification *<OrgnlInstrId>*	[0..1]	Text		17
	OriginalEndToEndIdentification *<OrgnlEndToEndId>*	[0..1]	Text		17
	OriginalTransactionIdentification *<OrgnlTxId>*	[0..1]	Text		17
	OriginalUETR *<OrgnlUETR>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		17
	TransactionStatus *<TxSts>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		18
	StatusReasonInformation *<StsRsnInf>*	[0..*]	±	C26	18
	ChargesInformation *<ChrgsInf>*	[0..*]	±		18

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AcceptanceDateTime <*AccptncDtTm*>	[0..1]	DateTime		19
	EffectiveInterbankSettlementDate <*FctvIntrBkSttlmDt*>	[0..1]	±		19
	AccountServicerReference <*AcctSvcrRef*>	[0..1]	Text		19
	ClearingSystemReference <*ClrSysRef*>	[0..1]	Text		19
	InstructingAgent <*InstgAgt*>	[0..1]	±		19
	InstructedAgent <*InstdAgt*>	[0..1]	±		20
	OriginalTransactionReference <*OrgnlTxRef*>	[0..1]	±		20
	SupplementaryData <*SplmtryData*>	[0..*]	±	C28	23
	SupplementaryData <*SplmtryData*>	[0..*]	±	C28	23

3.3   Constraints

C1   ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

C2   AmendmentIndicatorFalseRule

If AmendmentIndicator is false, then AmendmentInformationDetails is not allowed.

C3   AmendmentIndicatorTrueRule

If AmendmentIndicator is true, then AmendmentInformationDetails must be present.

C4   AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

C5   BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

C6   Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

C7   CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

C8   GroupStatusAcceptedRule

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus/GroupStatus is present and is equal to ACTC (AcceptedTechnicalValidation), ACCP (AcceptedCustomerProfile), ACSP (AcceptedSettlementInProcess), ACSC (AcceptedSettlementCompleted) or ACWC (AcceptedWithChange), then TransactionInformationAndStatus/TransactionStatus must be different from RJCT (Rejected).

```
On Condition
    /OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus[*]/GroupStatus is present
 And    /OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus[*]/GroupStatus is within DataType
<<Code>> ValidationRuleStatus1Code
 And    /TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/TransactionStatus is present
Following Must be True
    /TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/TransactionStatus Must not be within
DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleRejected1Code
```

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C9   GroupStatusPendingRule

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus/GroupStatus is present and is equal to PDNG (Pending), then TransactionInformationAndStatus/TransactionStatus must be different from RJCT (Rejected).

```
On Condition
    /OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus[*]/GroupStatus is present
 And    /OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus[*]/GroupStatus is within DataType
<<Code>> ValidationRulePending1Code
 And    /TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/TransactionStatus is present
Following Must be True
    /TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/TransactionStatus Must not be within
DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleRejected1Code
```

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C10   GroupStatusReceivedRule

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus/GroupStatus is present and is equal to RCVD (Received), then TransactionInformationAndStatus/TransactionStatus is not allowed.

```
On Condition
    /OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus[*]/GroupStatus is present
 And    /OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus[*]/GroupStatus is within DataType
<<Code>> ValidationRuleReceived1Code
 And    /TransactionInformationAndStatus[1] is present
Following Must be True
    /TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/TransactionStatus Must be absent
```

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C11   GroupStatusRejectedRule

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus/GroupStatus is present and is equal to RJCT (Rejected), then TransactionInformationAndStatus/TransactionStatus, if present, must be equal to RJCT (Rejected).

```
On Condition
    /OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus[*]/GroupStatus is present
 And    /OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus[*]/GroupStatus is within DataType
<<Code>> ValidationRuleRejected1Code
 And    /TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/TransactionStatus is present
Following Must be True
    /TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/TransactionStatus Must be within
DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleRejected1Code
```

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C12   IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

C13   IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

C14   IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

C15   InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule

If InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructedReimbursementAgent must be present.

C16   InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule

If InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

C17   NumberOfTransactionPerStatusGuideline

OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus/NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus should only be present if GroupStatus equals 'PART'.

C18   OriginalGroupInformationAbsenceRule

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus is absent, then

TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/OriginalGroupInformation must be present.

```
On Condition
    /OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus[*] is absent
Following Must be True
    /TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/OriginalGroupInformation Must be
present
```

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C19   OriginalGroupInformationMultiplePresenceRule

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus is present and multiple times (Occurrence > 1), then TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/OriginalGroupInformation must be present.

```
On Condition
    /OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus[2] is present
Following Must be True
    /TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/OriginalGroupInformation Must be
present
```

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C20   OriginalGroupInformationSinglePresenceRule

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus is present and only once, then TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/OriginalGroupInformation must be absent.

```
On Condition
    /OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus[1] is present
 And    /OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus[2] is absent
Following Must be True
```

```
      /TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/OriginalGroupInformation Must be
absent
```

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C21   SettlementMethodAgentRule

If SettlementMethod is equal to INDA or INGA, then ReimbursementAgent(s) and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

C22   SettlementMethodClearingRule

If SettlementMethod is equal to CLRG, then SettlementAccount and ReimbursementAgent(s) are not allowed.

C23   SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then InstructedReimbursementAgent or InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

C24   SettlementMethodCoverRule

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then SettlementAccount and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

C25   StatusReasonInformationRule

If GroupStatus is present and is different from RJCT or PDNG then StatusReasonInformation/ AdditionalInformation must be absent.

C26   StatusReasonRule

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AddititionalInformation must be present.

C27   SupplementaryDataRule

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C28   SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

C29   ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule

If ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then ThirdReimbursementAgent must be present.

C30   ThirdReimbursementAgentRule

If ThirdReimbursementAgent is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent and InstructedReimbursementAgent must both be present.

3.4   Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

3.4.1   GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Set of characteristics shared by all individual transactions included in the status report message.

GroupHeader <GrpHdr> contains the following **GroupHeader101** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification *<MsgId>*	[1..1]	Text		12
	CreationDateTime *<CreDtTm>*	[1..1]	DateTime		12
	InstructingAgent *<InstgAgt>*	[0..1]	±		12
	InstructedAgent *<InstdAgt>*	[0..1]	±		13
	OriginalBusinessQuery *<OrgnlBizQry>*	[0..1]	±		13

3.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the next party in the chain to unambiguously identify the message.

Usage: The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

3.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 200

3.4.1.3 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

Usage: The instructing agent is the party sending the status message and not the party that sent the original instruction that is being reported on.

InstructingAgent <InstgAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]	±		61

3.4.1.4 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

Usage: The instructed agent is the party receiving the status message and not the party that received the original instruction that is being reported on.

InstructedAgent <InstdAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]	±		61

3.4.1.5 OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original requestor, to unambiguously identify the business query message.

OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry> contains the following elements (see "OriginalBusinessQuery1" on page 99 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification *<MsgId>*	[1..1]	Text		99
	MessageNameIdentification *<MsgNmId>*	[0..1]	Text		99
	CreationDateTime *<CreDtTm>*	[0..1]	DateTime		99

3.4.2 OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus <OrgnlGrpInfAndSts>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Original group information concerning the group of transactions, to which the status report message refers to.

Impacted by: C25 "StatusReasonInformationRule", C17 "NumberOfTransactionPerStatusGuideline"

OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus <OrgnlGrpInfAndSts> contains the following
OriginalGroupHeader17 elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMessageIdentification <*OrgnlMsgId*>	[1..1]	Text		14
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <*OrgnlMsgNmId*>	[1..1]	Text		14
	OriginalCreationDateTime <*OrgnlCreDtTm*>	[0..1]	DateTime		14
	OriginalNumberOfTransactions <*OrgnlNbOfTxs*>	[0..1]	Text		15
	OriginalControlSum <*OrgnlCtrlSum*>	[0..1]	Quantity		15
	GroupStatus <*GrpSts*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		15
	StatusReasonInformation <*StsRsnInf*>	[0..*]	±	C26	15
	NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus <*NbOfTxsPerSts*>	[0..*]	±		15

Constraints

- **NumberOfTransactionPerStatusGuideline**

  OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus/NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus should only be present if
  GroupStatus equals 'PART'.

- **StatusReasonInformationRule**

  If GroupStatus is present and is different from RJCT or PDNG then StatusReasonInformation/
  AdditionalInformation must be absent.

```
On Condition
    /GroupStatus is present
 And    /GroupStatus is not within DataType <<Code>>
ValidationRulePendingAndRejected1Code
Following Must be True
    /StatusReasonInformation[*]/AdditionalInformation[*] Must be absent
```

3.4.2.1 OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the original instructing party, to unambiguously
identify the original message.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

3.4.2.2 OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the original message name identifier to which the message refers.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

3.4.2.3 OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the original message was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 200

3.4.2.4 OriginalNumberOfTransactions <OrgnlNbOfTxs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number of individual transactions contained in the original message.

Datatype: "Max15NumericText" on page 204

3.4.2.5 OriginalControlSum <OrgnlCtrlSum>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total of all individual amounts included in the original message, irrespective of currencies.

Datatype: "DecimalNumber" on page 202

3.4.2.6 GroupStatus <GrpSts>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the status of a group of transactions.

Datatype: "ExternalPaymentGroupStatus1Code" on page 193

3.4.2.7 StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides detailed information on the status reason.

Impacted by: C26 "StatusReasonRule"

StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf> contains the following elements (see "StatusReasonInformation12" on page 181 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Originator <*Orgtr*>	[0..1]	±		182
	Reason <*Rsn*>	[0..1]			182
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		182
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		182
	AdditionalInformation <*Addtllnf*>	[0..*]	Text		182

Constraints

• **StatusReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

```
On Condition
    /Reason/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleNarrative1Code
 And    /Reason is present
 And    /Reason/Code is present
Following Must be True
    /AdditionalInformation[1] Must be present
```

3.4.2.8 NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus <NbOfTxsPerSts>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Detailed information on the number of transactions for each identical transaction status.

NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus <NbOfTxsPerSts> contains the following elements (see <u>"NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus5" on page 100</u> for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DetailedNumberOfTransactions <*DtldNbOfTxs*>	[1..1]	Text		100
	DetailedStatus <*DtldSts*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		100
	DetailedControlSum <*DtldCtrlSum*>	[0..1]	Quantity		100

3.4.3 TransactionInformationAndStatus <TxInfAndSts>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Information concerning the original transactions, to which the status report message refers.

TransactionInformationAndStatus <TxInfAndSts> contains the following **PaymentTransaction130** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	StatusIdentification <*StsId*>	[0..1]	Text		16
	OriginalGroupInformation <*OrgnlGrpInf*>	[0..1]	±		17
	OriginalInstructionIdentification <*OrgnlInstrId*>	[0..1]	Text		17
	OriginalEndToEndIdentification <*OrgnlEndToEndId*>	[0..1]	Text		17
	OriginalTransactionIdentification <*OrgnlTxId*>	[0..1]	Text		17
	OriginalUETR <*OrgnlUETR*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		17
	TransactionStatus <*TxSts*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		18
	StatusReasonInformation <*StsRsnInf*>	[0..*]	±	C26	18
	ChargesInformation <*ChrgsInf*>	[0..*]	±		18
	AcceptanceDateTime <*AccptncDtTm*>	[0..1]	DateTime		19
	EffectiveInterbankSettlementDate <*FctvIntrBkSttlmDt*>	[0..1]	±		19
	AccountServicerReference <*AcctSvcrRef*>	[0..1]	Text		19
	ClearingSystemReference <*ClrSysRef*>	[0..1]	Text		19
	InstructingAgent <*InstgAgt*>	[0..1]	±		19
	InstructedAgent <*InstdAgt*>	[0..1]	±		20
	OriginalTransactionReference <*OrgnlTxRef*>	[0..1]	±		20
	SupplementaryData <*SplmtryData*>	[0..*]	±	C28	23

3.4.3.1 StatusIdentification <StsId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by an instructing party for an instructed party, to unambiguously identify the reported status.

Usage: The instructing party is the party sending the status message and not the party that sent the original instruction that is being reported on.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

3.4.3.2 OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the original instructing party, to unambiguously identify the original message.

OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf> contains the following elements (see "OriginalGroupInformation29" on page 99 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMessageIdentification <*OrgnlMsgId*>	[1..1]	Text		99
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification <*OrgnlMsgNmId*>	[1..1]	Text		100
	OriginalCreationDateTime <*OrgnlCreDtTm*>	[0..1]	DateTime		100

3.4.3.3 OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original instructing party for the original instructed party, to unambiguously identify the original instruction.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

3.4.3.4 OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original initiating party, to unambiguously identify the original transaction.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

3.4.3.5 OriginalTransactionIdentification <OrgnlTxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original first instructing agent, to unambiguously identify the transaction.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

3.4.3.6 OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Universally unique identifier to provide the original end-to-end reference of a payment transaction.

Datatype: "UUIDv4Identifier" on page 202

3.4.3.7 TransactionStatus <TxSts>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the status of a transaction, in a coded form.

Datatype: "ExternalPaymentTransactionStatus1Code" on page 193

3.4.3.8 StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides detailed information on the status reason.

Impacted by: C26 "StatusReasonRule"

StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf> contains the following elements (see "StatusReasonInformation12" on page 181 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Originator <*Orgtr*>	[0..1]	±		182
	Reason <*Rsn*>	[0..1]			182
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		182
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		182
	AdditionalInformation <*Addtlinf*>	[0..*]	Text		182

Constraints

- **StatusReasonRule**

   If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then Addititional Information must be present.

```
On Condition
    /Reason/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleNarrative1Code
 And    /Reason is present
 And    /Reason/Code is present
Following Must be True
    /AdditionalInformation[1] Must be present
```

3.4.3.9 ChargesInformation <ChrgsInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides information on the charges related to the processing of the rejection of the instruction.

Usage: This is passed on for information purposes only. Settlement of the charges will be done separately.

ChargesInformation <ChrgsInf> contains the following elements (see "Charges7" on page 49 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	49
	Agent <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		49

3.4.3.10 AcceptanceDateTime <AccptncDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Point in time when the payment order from the initiating party meets the processing conditions of the account servicing agent. This means that the account servicing agent has received the payment order and has applied checks such as authorisation, availability of funds.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 200

3.4.3.11 EffectiveInterbankSettlementDate <FctvIntrBkSttlmDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which a transaction is completed and cleared, that is, payment is effected.

EffectiveInterbankSettlementDate <FctvIntrBkSttlmDt> contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 50 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date *<Dt>*	[1..1]	Date		50
Or}	DateTime *<DtTm>*	[1..1]	DateTime		50

3.4.3.12 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference, as assigned by the account servicing institution, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

3.4.3.13 ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

3.4.3.14 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

Usage: The instructing agent is the party sending the status message and not the party that sent the original instruction that is being reported on.

InstructingAgent <InstgAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]	±		61

3.4.3.15 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

Usage: The instructed agent is the party receiving the status message and not the party that received the original instruction that is being reported on.

InstructedAgent <InstdAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]	±		61

3.4.3.16 OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Key elements used to identify the original transaction that is being referred to.

OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef> contains the following elements (see <u>"OriginalTransactionReference35" on page 69</u> for details)

Or	MessageElement<_XML Tag_>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InterbankSettlementAmount <_IntrBkSttlmAmt_>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	72
	Amount <_Amt_>	[0..1]	±		72
	InterbankSettlementDate <_IntrBkSttlmDt_>	[0..1]	Date		73
	RequestedCollectionDate <_ReqdColltnDt_>	[0..1]	Date		73
	RequestedExecutionDate <_ReqdExctnDt_>	[0..1]	±		73
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <_CdtrSchmeId_>	[0..1]	±		73
	SettlementInformation <_SttlmInf_>	[0..1]		C15, C16, C21, C22, C23, C24, C29, C30	73
	SettlementMethod <_SttlmMtd_>	[1..1]	CodeSet		75
	SettlementAccount <_SttlmAcct_>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	76
	ClearingSystem <_ClrSys_>	[0..1]			76
{Or	Code <_Cd_>	[1..1]	CodeSet		77
Or}	Proprietary <_Prtry_>	[1..1]	Text		77
	InstructingReimbursementAgent <_InstgRmbrsmntAgt_>	[0..1]	±		77
	InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <_InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct_>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	77
	InstructedReimbursementAgent <_InstdRmbrsmntAgt_>	[0..1]	±		78
	InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <_InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct_>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	78
	ThirdReimbursementAgent <_ThrdRmbrsmntAgt_>	[0..1]	±		79
	ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <_ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct_>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	79
	PaymentTypeInformation <_PmtTpInf_>	[0..1]	±		80
	PaymentMethod <_PmtMtd_>	[0..1]	CodeSet		81
	MandateRelatedInformation <_MndtRltdInf_>	[0..1]			81
{Or	DirectDebitMandate <_DrctDbtMndt_>	[0..1]		C2, C3	83
	MandateIdentification <_MndtId_>	[0..1]	Text		85
	DateOfSignature <_DtOfSgntr_>	[0..1]	Date		85
	AmendmentIndicator <_AmdmntInd_>	[0..1]	Indicator		85

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AmendmentInformationDetails *<AmdmntInfDtls>*	[0..1]			85
	OriginalMandateIdentification *<OrgnlMndtId>*	[0..1]	Text		86
	OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification *<OrgnlCdtrSchmeId>*	[0..1]	±		86
	OriginalCreditorAgent *<OrgnlCdtrAgt>*	[0..1]	±		87
	OriginalCreditorAgentAccount *<OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	87
	OriginalDebtor *<OrgnlDbtr>*	[0..1]	±		88
	OriginalDebtorAccount *<OrgnlDbtrAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	88
	OriginalDebtorAgent *<OrgnlDbtrAgt>*	[0..1]	±		89
	OriginalDebtorAgentAccount *<OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	89
	OriginalFinalCollectionDate *<OrgnlFnlColltnDt>*	[0..1]	Date		90
	OriginalFrequency *<OrgnlFrqcy>*	[0..1]	±		90
	OriginalReason *<OrgnlRsn>*	[0..1]			90
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		91
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		91
	OriginalTrackingDays *<OrgnlTrckgDays>*	[0..1]	Text		91
	ElectronicSignature *<ElctrncSgntr>*	[0..1]	Text		91
	FirstCollectionDate *<FrstColltnDt>*	[0..1]	Date		91
	FinalCollectionDate *<FnlColltnDt>*	[0..1]	Date		91
	Frequency *<Frqcy>*	[0..1]	±		91
	Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]			92
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		92
	TrackingDays *<TrckgDays>*	[0..1]	Text		92
Or}	CreditTransferMandate *<CdtTrfMndt>*	[0..1]	±		92
	RemittanceInformation *<RmtInf>*	[0..1]	±		93
	UltimateDebtor *<UltmtDbtr>*	[0..1]	±		93
	Debtor *<Dbtr>*	[0..1]	±		93
	DebtorAccount *<DbtrAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	94
	DebtorAgent *<DbtrAgt>*	[0..1]	±		94

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DebtorAgentAccount *<DbtrAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	95
	CreditorAgent *<CdtrAgt>*	[0..1]	±		95
	CreditorAgentAccount *<CdtrAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	96
	Creditor *<Cdtr>*	[0..1]	±		96
	CreditorAccount *<CdtrAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	97
	UltimateCreditor *<UltmtCdtr>*	[0..1]	±		97
	Purpose *<Purp>*	[0..1]	±		98

3.4.3.17 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C28 "SupplementaryDataRule"

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 68 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName *<PlcAndNm>*	[0..1]	Text		69
	Envelope *<Envlp>*	[1..1]	(External Schema)		69

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

   This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

3.4.4   SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C28 "SupplementaryDataRule"

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 68 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName *<PlcAndNm>*	[0..1]	Text		69
	Envelope *<Envlp>*	[1..1]	(External Schema)		69

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

    This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

4   pacs.029.001.02 MultilateralSettlementRequestV02

4.1   MessageDefinition Functionality

The MultilateralSettlementRequest message is sent from an instructing agent to a market infrastructure to settle obligations between their participants using accounts held in a settlement service.

Usage: The MultilateralSettlementRequest message can contain one or more settlement instructions with multiple movements between accounts. By default, all movements present in an individual instruction shall be processed as a batch entry rather than a single entry per individual movement.

Outline

The MultilateralSettlementRequestV02 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

   Set of characteristics shared by all individual instructions included in the message.

B. SettlementRequest

   Set of elements providing information specific to the individual settlement request(s).

C. SupplementaryData

   Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

4.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <MulSttlmReq>	[1..1]			
	GroupHeader <*GrpHdr*>	[1..1]			28
	MessageIdentification <*MsgId*>	[1..1]	Text		28
	CreationDateTime <*CreDtTm*>	[1..1]	DateTime		28
	NumberOfSettlementRequests <*NbOfSttlmReqs*>	[1..1]	Text		28
	ControlSum <*CtrlSum*>	[0..1]	Quantity		29
	SettlementInformation <*SttlmInf*>	[0..1]		C9, C10	29
	SettlementMethod <*SttlmMtd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		29
	SettlementAccount <*SttlmAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C8, C7	30
	ClearingSystem <*ClrSys*>	[0..1]			30
{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		31
Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		31
	SettlementRequest <*SttlmReq*>	[1..*]			31
	InstructionIdentification <*InstrId*>	[1..1]	Text		32
	InstructionPriority <*InstrPrty*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		32
	SettlementTimeRequest <*SttlmTmReq*>	[0..1]	±		33
	SettlementPriority <*SttlmPrty*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		33
	SettlementCycle <*SttlmCycl*>	[0..1]	Text		33
	NumberOfMovementRecords <*NbOfMvmntRcrds*>	[0..1]	Quantity		34
	MovementRecord <*MvmntRcrd*>	[2..*]			34
	Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		34
	SequenceNumber <*SeqNb*>	[0..1]	Quantity		34
	Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	±		35
	SettlementAgent <*SttlmAgt*>	[0..1]	±		35
	SettlementAgentAccount <*SttlmAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C8, C7	36
	Participant <*Ptcpt*>	[0..1]	±		37
	ParticipantAccount <*PtcptAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C8, C7	38
	Reference <*Ref*>	[0..1]	Text		39
	SupplementaryData <*SplmtryData*>	[0..1]	±	C11	39

4.3   Constraints

C1   **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

C2   **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

C3   **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

C4   **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

C5   **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

C6   **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

C7   **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

C8   **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

C9   **SettlementMethodAgentRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to INDA or INGA, then ClearingSystem is not allowed.

C10   **SettlementMethodClearingRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to CLRG, then ClearingSystem must be present and SettlementAccount is not allowed.

C11   **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

4.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

4.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Set of characteristics shared by all individual instructions included in the message.

GroupHeader <GrpHdr> contains the following **GroupHeader104** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <*MsgId*>	[1..1]	Text		28
	CreationDateTime <*CreDtTm*>	[1..1]	DateTime		28
	NumberOfSettlementRequests <*NbOfSttlmReqs*>	[1..1]	Text		28
	ControlSum <*CtrlSum*>	[0..1]	Quantity		29
	SettlementInformation <*SttlmInf*>	[0..1]		C9, C10	29
	SettlementMethod <*SttlmMtd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		29
	SettlementAccount <*SttlmAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C8, C7	30
	ClearingSystem <*ClrSys*>	[0..1]			30
{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		31
Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		31

4.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing agent, and sent to the market infrastructure to unambiguously identify the message.

Usage: The instructing agent has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per market infrastructure for a pre-agreed period.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

4.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 200

4.4.1.3 NumberOfSettlementRequests <NbOfSttlmReqs>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Number of individual settlement requests contained in the message.

Datatype: "Max15NumericText" on page 204

4.4.1.4 ControlSum <CtrlSum>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total of all individual amounts included in the message, irrespective of currencies.

Datatype: "DecimalNumber" on page 202

4.4.1.5 SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the details on how the settlement of the transaction(s) between the instructing agent and the market infrastructure is completed.

Impacted by: C9 "SettlementMethodAgentRule", C10 "SettlementMethodClearingRule"

SettlementInformation <SttlmInf> contains the following **SettlementInstruction14** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SettlementMethod *<SttlmMtd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		29
	SettlementAccount *<SttlmAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C8, C7	30
	ClearingSystem *<ClrSys>*	[0..1]			30
{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		31
Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		31

Constraints

- **SettlementMethodAgentRule**

  If SettlementMethod is equal to INDA or INGA, then ClearingSystem is not allowed.

  ```
  On Condition
      /SettlementMethod is equal to value 'InstructingAgent'
   Or    /SettlementMethod is equal to value 'InstructedAgent'
  Following Must be True
      /ClearingSystem Must be absent
  ```

- **SettlementMethodClearingRule**

  If SettlementMethod is equal to CLRG, then ClearingSystem must be present and SettlementAccount is not allowed.

  ```
  On Condition
      /SettlementMethod is equal to value 'ClearingSystem'
  Following Must be True
      /SettlementAccount Must be absent
   And    /ClearingSystem Must be present
  ```

4.4.1.5.1 SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Method used to settle the (batch of) payment instructions.

Datatype: "SettlementMethod2Code" on page 198

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	InstructedAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructed to execute a payment instruction.
INGA	InstructingAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructing and forwarding the payment to the next party in the payment chain.
CLRG	ClearingSystem	Settlement is done through a payment clearing system.

4.4.1.5.2 SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: A specific purpose account used to post debit and credit entries as a result of the transaction.

Impacted by: C8 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C7 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency <*Ccy*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy <*Prxy*>	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
    /Identification Must be present
 Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

4.4.1.5.3 ClearingSystem <ClrSys>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

ClearingSystem <ClrSys> contains one of the following **ClearingSystemIdentification3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		31
Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		31

4.4.1.5.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Infrastructure through which the payment instruction is processed, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

Datatype: "ExternalCashClearingSystem1Code" on page 190

4.4.1.5.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Clearing system identification in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

4.4.2   SettlementRequest <SttlmReq>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Set of elements providing information specific to the individual settlement request(s).

SettlementRequest <SttlmReq> contains the following **MultilateralSettlementRequest3** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructionIdentification <*InstrId*>	[1..1]	Text		32
	InstructionPriority <*InstrPrty*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		32
	SettlementTimeRequest <*SttlmTmReq*>	[0..1]	±		33
	SettlementPriority <*SttlmPrty*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		33
	SettlementCycle <*SttlmCycl*>	[0..1]	Text		33
	NumberOfMovementRecords <*NbOfMvmntRcrds*>	[0..1]	Quantity		34
	MovementRecord <*MvmntRcrd*>	[2..*]			34
	Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		34
	SequenceNumber <*SeqNb*>	[0..1]	Quantity		34
	Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	±		35
	SettlementAgent <*SttlmAgt*>	[0..1]	±		35
	SettlementAgentAccount <*SttlmAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C8, C7	36
	Participant <*Ptcpt*>	[0..1]	±		37
	ParticipantAccount <*PtcptAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C8, C7	38
	Reference <*Ref*>	[0..1]	Text		39

4.4.2.1 InstructionIdentification <InstrId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the instructing agent, and sent to the market infrastructure to unambiguously identify the instruction.

Usage: The instruction identification is a point to point reference that can be used between the instructing agent and the market infrastructure to refer to the individual instruction. It can be included in several messages related to the instruction.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

4.4.2.2 InstructionPriority <InstrPrty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicator of the urgency or order of importance that the instructing agent would like the market infrastructure to apply to the processing of the instruction.

Usage: Market practice or bilateral agreement should specify how this element should be used. If this element is not populated and there is no market guidance or bilateral agreement, the priority will be considered as 'Normal'.

Datatype: "Priority3Code" on page 197

CodeName	Name	Definition
URGT	Urgent	Priority level is urgent (highest priority possible).
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

4.4.2.3 SettlementTimeRequest <SttlmTmReq>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the requested settlement time(s) of the instruction.

SettlementTimeRequest <SttlmTmReq> contains the following elements (see "SettlementTimeRequest2" on page 121 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CLSTime <*CLSTm*>	[0..1]	Time		122
	TillTime <*TillTm*>	[0..1]	Time		122
	FromTime <*FrTm*>	[0..1]	Time		122
	RejectTime <*RjctTm*>	[0..1]	Time		122

4.4.2.4 SettlementPriority <SttlmPrty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicator of the urgency or order of importance that the instructing agent would like the market infrastructure to apply to the processing of the settlement instruction.

Usage: Market practice or bilateral agreement should specify how this element should be used. If this element is not populated and there is no market guidance or bilateral agreement, the priority will be considered as 'Normal'.

Datatype: "Priority3Code" on page 197

CodeName	Name	Definition
URGT	Urgent	Priority level is urgent (highest priority possible).
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

4.4.2.5 SettlementCycle <SttlmCycl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the settlement cycle in the settlement service.

Usage: The SettlementCycle is used to differentiate this multilateral settlement from other multilateral settlements where more than one occurs within a given time period.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

4.4.2.6 NumberOfMovementRecords <NbOfMvmntRcrds>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicator of the number of movement records contained in an individual settlement request.

Datatype: "Number" on page 202

4.4.2.7 MovementRecord <MvmntRcrd>

Presence: [2..*]

Definition: Credit or debit transaction contained in an individual settlement request.

Usage: The sum of all amounts (debit and credit records) should net to zero where net settlement is used.

MovementRecord <MvmntRcrd> contains the following **MovementRecord2** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		34
	SequenceNumber *<SeqNb>*	[0..1]	Quantity		34
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	±		35
	SettlementAgent *<SttlmAgt>*	[0..1]	±		35
	SettlementAgentAccount *<SttlmAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C8, C7	36
	Participant *<Ptcpt>*	[0..1]	±		37
	ParticipantAccount *<PtcptAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C8, C7	38
	Reference *<Ref>*	[0..1]	Text		39

4.4.2.7.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the instructing agent, and sent to the market infrastructure to unambiguously identify the specific movement record (transaction) within a settlement request.

Usage: The movement identification is a point to point reference that can be used between the instructing agent and the market infrastructure to refer to the individual movement record within a settlement request. It can be included in several messages related to the movement.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

4.4.2.7.2 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: An index to identify the individual movement record entry.

Datatype: "Number" on page 202

4.4.2.7.3 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money requested by the instructing agent for settlement at the market infrastructure in a single movement record entry.

Amount <Amt> contains the following elements (see <u>"AmountAndDirection5" on page 46</u> for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	46
	CreditDebit *<CdtDbt>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		47

4.4.2.7.4 SettlementAgent <SttlmAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent in whose account the funds settle on behalf of the participant.

SettlementAgent <SttlmAgt> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 110 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		111
	PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		112
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]			112
{Or	OrganisationIdentification *<OrgId>*	[1..1]			113
	AnyBIC *<AnyBIC>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	114
	LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
	Other *<Othr>*	[0..*]			114
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		115
	SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			115
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		115
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		115
Or}	PrivateIdentification *<PrvtId>*	[1..1]			115
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth *<DtAndPlcOfBirth>*	[0..1]			116
	BirthDate *<BirthDt>*	[1..1]	Date		116
	ProvinceOfBirth *<PrvcOfBirth>*	[0..1]	Text		116
	CityOfBirth *<CityOfBirth>*	[1..1]	Text		117
	CountryOfBirth *<CtryOfBirth>*	[1..1]	CodeSet	C6	117
	Other *<Othr>*	[0..*]			117
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		117
	SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			117
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		118
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		118
	CountryOfResidence *<CtryOfRes>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	118
	ContactDetails *<CtctDtls>*	[0..1]	±		118

4.4.2.7.5 SettlementAgentAccount <SttlmAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the settlement agent.

Impacted by: C8 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C7 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

SettlementAgentAccount <SttlmAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency <*Ccy*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy <*Prxy*>	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  ```
  Following Must be True
      /Identification Must be present
   Or    /Proxy Must be present
  ```

4.4.2.7.6 Participant <Ptcpt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a participant on behalf of which the settlement agent instructs the market infrastructure to settle the obligations using accounts held in the settlement service.

Participant <Ptcpt> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 110 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		111
	PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		112
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]			112
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]			113
	AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	114
	LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
	Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
	Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		115
	SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			115
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
	Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115
Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]			115
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			116
	BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		116
	ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		116
	CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		117
	CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C6	117
	Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			117
	Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		117
	SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			117
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		118
	Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		118
	CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	118
	ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		118

4.4.2.7.7 ParticipantAccount <PtcptAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the participant held in the settlement service.

Impacted by: C8 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C7 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

ParticipantAccount <PtcptAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		42
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
    /Identification Must be present
 Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

4.4.2.7.8 Reference <Ref>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reference information to complement a movement record.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

4.4.3   SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C11 "SupplementaryDataRule"

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 68 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName *<PlcAndNm>*	[0..1]	Text		69
	Envelope *<Envlp>*	[1..1]	(External Schema)		69

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

  This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

5   Message Items Types

5.1   MessageComponents

5.1.1   Account

5.1.1.1 CashAccountType2Choice

Definition: Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		41
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		41

5.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Account type, in a coded form.

Datatype: "ExternalCashAccountType1Code" on page 190

5.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Nature or use of the account in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.1.2 CashAccount40

Definition: Provides the details to identify an account.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		42
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
    /Identification Must be present
 Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

5.1.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

Identification <Id> contains one of the following elements (see "AccountIdentification4Choice" on page 45 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN *<IBAN>*	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C12	45
Or}	Other *<Othr>*	[1..1]	±		46

5.1.1.2.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following elements (see "CashAccountType2Choice" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		41
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		41

5.1.1.2.3 Currency <Ccy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

Usage: Currency should only be used in case one and the same account number covers several currencies

and the initiating party needs to identify which currency needs to be used for settlement on the account.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 187

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

5.1.1.2.4 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

Usage: The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.1.2.5 Proxy <Prxy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies an alternate assumed name for the identification of the account.

Proxy <Prxy> contains the following elements (see "ProxyAccountIdentification1" on page 44 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			44
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		45
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		45
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		45

5.1.1.3 GenericAccountIdentification1

Definition: Information related to a generic account identification.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		43
	SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			44
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		44
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		44
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		44

5.1.1.3.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification assigned by an institution.

Datatype: "Max34Text" on page 205

5.1.1.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **AccountSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		44
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		44

5.1.1.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalAccountIdentification1Code" on page 190

5.1.1.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.1.3.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.1.4 ProxyAccountIdentification1

Definition: Information related to a proxy identification of the account.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			44
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		45
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		45
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		45

5.1.1.4.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Type of the proxy identification.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **ProxyAccountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		45
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		45

5.1.1.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalProxyAccountType1Code" on page 194

5.1.1.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.1.4.2 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification used to indicate the account identification under another specified name.

Datatype: "Max2048Text" on page 205

5.1.2   Account Identification

5.1.2.1 AccountIdentification4Choice

Definition: Specifies the unique identification of an account as assigned by the account servicer.

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <*IBAN*>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C12	45
Or}	Other <*Othr*>	[1..1]	±		46

5.1.2.1.1 IBAN <IBAN>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: International Bank Account Number (IBAN) - identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer. Further specifications of the format and content of the IBAN can be found in the standard ISO 13616 "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" version 1997-10-01, or later revisions.

Impacted by: C12 "IBAN"

Datatype: "IBAN2007Identifier" on page 201

Constraints

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

5.1.2.1.2 Other <Othr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification of an account, as assigned by the account servicer, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following elements (see "GenericAccountIdentification1" on page 43 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		43
	SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			44
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		44
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		44
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		44

5.1.3   Amount

5.1.3.1 AmountAndDirection5

Definition: Amount of money debited or credited on the books of an account servicer.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	46
	CreditDebit *<CdtDbt>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		47

5.1.3.1.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money that is debited or credited.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 185

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217

Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.3.1.2 CreditDebit <CdtDbt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates if the amount is a debited or a credited.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 188

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

5.1.3.2 AmountType4Choice

Definition: Specifies the amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	InstructedAmount <*InstdAmt*>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	47
Or}	EquivalentAmount <*EqvtAmt*>	[1..1]			48
	Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	48
	CurrencyOfTransfer <*CcyOfTrf*>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C1	48

5.1.3.2.1 InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Usage: This amount has to be transported unchanged through the transaction chain.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.3.2.2 EquivalentAmount <EqvtAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, expressed in the currency of the debtor's account, and the currency in which the amount is to be moved.

EquivalentAmount <EqvtAmt> contains the following **EquivalentAmount2** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	48
	CurrencyOfTransfer *<CcyOfTrf>*	[1..1]	CodeSet	C1	48

5.1.3.2.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency of the debtor's account, and to be moved in a different currency.

Usage: The first agent will convert the equivalent amount into the amount to be moved.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.3.2.2.2 CurrencyOfTransfer <CcyOfTrf>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the currency of the to be transferred amount, which is different from the currency of the debtor's account.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 187

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

5.1.4   Charge

5.1.4.1 Charges7

Definition: Provides information on the charges related to the payment transaction.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	49
	Agent *<Agt>*	[1..1]	±		49

5.1.4.1.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Transaction charges to be paid by the charge bearer.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.4.1.2 Agent <Agt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Agent that takes the transaction charges or to which the transaction charges are due.

Agent <Agt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]	±		61

5.1.5   Date Period

5.1.5.1 DatePeriod2

Definition: Range of time defined by a start date and an end date.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate *<FrDt>*	[1..1]	Date		50
	ToDate *<ToDt>*	[1..1]	Date		50

5.1.5.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Start date of the range.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.5.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: End date of the range.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.6   Date Time

5.1.6.1 DateAndDateTime2Choice

Definition: Choice between a date or a date and time format.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date *<Dt>*	[1..1]	Date		50
Or}	DateTime *<DtTm>*	[1..1]	DateTime		50

5.1.6.1.1 Date <Dt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specified date.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.6.1.2 DateTime <DtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specified date and time.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 200

5.1.7   Direct Debit

5.1.7.1 CreditTransferMandateData1

Definition: Provides further details related to a credit transfer mandate signed between the creditor and the debtor.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MandateIdentification *<MndtId>*	[0..1]	Text		51
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		51
	DateOfSignature *<DtOfSgntr>*	[0..1]	Date		52
	DateOfVerification *<DtOfVrfctn>*	[0..1]	DateTime		52
	ElectronicSignature *<ElctrncSgntr>*	[0..1]	Binary		52
	FirstPaymentDate *<FrstPmtDt>*	[0..1]	Date		52
	FinalPaymentDate *<FnlPmtDt>*	[0..1]	Date		52
	Frequency *<Frqcy>*	[0..1]	±		53
	Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]			53
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		53
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		53

5.1.7.1.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.7.1.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

Type <Tp> contains the following elements (see "MandateTypeInformation2" on page 66 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <*SvcLvl*>	[0..1]			66
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		67
	LocalInstrument <*LclInstrm*>	[0..1]			67
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		67
	CategoryPurpose <*CtgyPurp*>	[0..1]			67
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		68
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		68
	Classification <*Clssfctn*>	[0..1]	±		68

5.1.7.1.3 DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the credit transfer mandate has been signed by the debtor.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.7.1.4 DateOfVerification <DtOfVrfctn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the credit transfer mandate has been verified.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 200

5.1.7.1.5 ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Additional security provisions, such as a digital signature, as provided by the debtor.

Datatype: "Max10KBinary" on page 186

5.1.7.1.6 FirstPaymentDate <FrstPmtDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the first payment of a recurrent credit transfer as per the mandate.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.7.1.7 FinalPaymentDate <FnlPmtDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the final payment of a recurrent credit transfer as per the mandate.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.7.1.8 Frequency <Frqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Regularity with which credit transfer instructions are to be created and processed.

Frequency <Frqcy> contains one of the following elements (see "Frequency36Choice" on page 62 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Type *<Tp>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
Or	Period *<Prd>*	[1..1]			63
	Type *<Tp>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
	CountPerPeriod *<CntPerPrd>*	[1..1]	Quantity		64
Or}	PointInTime *<PtInTm>*	[1..1]			64
	Type *<Tp>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
	PointInTime *<PtInTm>*	[1..1]	Text		65

5.1.7.1.9 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reason for the setup of the credit transfer mandate.

Usage:

The reason will allow the user to distinguish between different mandates for the same creditor.

Reason <Rsn> contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		53
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		53

5.1.7.1.9.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: "ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code" on page 192

5.1.7.1.9.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.8   Document

5.1.8.1 CreditorReferenceInformation2

Definition: Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			54
	CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			54
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		55
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		55
	Reference *<Ref>*	[0..1]	Text		55

5.1.8.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of creditor reference.

Type <Tp> contains the following **CreditorReferenceType2** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			54
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		55
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		55

5.1.8.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Coded or proprietary format creditor reference type.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **CreditorReferenceType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		55

5.1.8.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of creditor reference, in a coded form.

Datatype: "DocumentType3Code" on page 188

CodeName	Name	Definition
RADM	RemittanceAdviceMessage	Document is a remittance advice sent separately from the current transaction.
RPIN	RelatedPaymentInstruction	Document is a linked payment instruction to which the current payment instruction is related, for example, in a cover scenario.
FXDR	ForeignExchangeDealReference	Document is a pre-agreed or pre-arranged foreign exchange transaction to which the payment transaction refers.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.
SCOR	StructuredCommunicationReference	Document is a structured communication reference provided by the creditor to identify the referred transaction.

5.1.8.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Creditor reference type, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.8.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the credit reference type.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.8.1.2 Reference <Ref>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously refer to the payment transaction.

Usage: If available, the initiating party should provide this reference in the structured remittance information, to enable reconciliation by the creditor upon receipt of the amount of money.

If the business context requires the use of a creditor reference or a payment remit identification, and only one identifier can be passed through the end-to-end chain, the creditor's reference or payment remittance identification should be quoted in the end-to-end transaction identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.9 Financial Institution Identification

5.1.9.1 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify a member of the clearing system.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification *<ClrSysId>*	[0..1]	±		56
	MemberIdentification *<MmbId>*	[1..1]	Text		56

5.1.9.1.1 ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId> contains one of the following elements (see "ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice" on page 183 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		183
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		183

5.1.9.1.2 MemberIdentification <MmbId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a member of a clearing system.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.9.2 FinancialInstitutionIdentification18

Definition: Specifies the details to identify a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI *<BICFI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C5	56
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification *<ClrSysMmbId>*	[0..1]	±		57
	LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		57
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		57
	PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		57
	Other *<Othr>*	[0..1]	±		58

5.1.9.2.1 BICFI <BICFI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Impacted by: C5 "BICFI"

Datatype: "BICFIDec2014Identifier" on page 201

Constraints

- **BICFI**

    Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration
    Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

5.1.9.2.2 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information used to identify a member within a clearing system.

ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbId> contains the following elements (see
"ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2" on page 55 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification *<ClrSysId>*	[0..1]	±		56
	MemberIdentification *<MmbId>*	[1..1]	Text		56

5.1.9.2.3 LEI <LEI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal entity identifier of the financial institution.

Datatype: "LEIIdentifier" on page 201

5.1.9.2.4 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.9.2.5 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstlAdr> contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress24" on page 134 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			135
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		136
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		136
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		136
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		136
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		136
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		137
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		137
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		137
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		137
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		137
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		137
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		137
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		137
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		138
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	138
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		138

5.1.9.2.6 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification of an agent, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following elements (see "GenericFinancialIdentification1" on page 61 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		61
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			62
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		62
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		62
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		62

5.1.9.3 BranchData3

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		59
	LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		59
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		59
	PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		59

5.1.9.3.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a branch of a financial institution.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.9.3.2 LEI <LEI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal entity identification for the branch of the financial institution.

Datatype: "LEIIdentifier" on page 201

5.1.9.3.3 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.9.3.4 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstlAdr> contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress24" on page 134 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			135
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		136
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		136
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		136
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		136
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		136
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		137
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		137
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		137
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		137
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		137
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		137
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		137
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		137
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		138
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	138
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		138

5.1.9.4 BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution or a branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		61

5.1.9.4.1 FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution, as assigned under an internationally recognised or proprietary identification scheme.

FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId> contains the following elements (see "FinancialInstitutionIdentification18" on page 56 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI <*BICFI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C5	56
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <*ClrSysMmbId*>	[0..1]	±		57
	LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		57
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		57
	PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		57
	Other <*Othr*>	[0..1]	±		58

5.1.9.4.2 BranchIdentification <BrnchId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

Usage: This component should be used in case the identification information in the financial institution component does not provide identification up to branch level.

BranchIdentification <BrnchId> contains the following elements (see "BranchData3" on page 59 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	Text		59
	LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		59
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		59
	PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		59

5.1.9.5 GenericFinancialIdentification1

Definition: Information related to an identification of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		61
	SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			62
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		62
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		62
	Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		62

5.1.9.5.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

Datatype: <u>"Max35Text" on page 205</u>

5.1.9.5.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **FinancialIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		62
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		62

5.1.9.5.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: <u>"ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code" on page 192</u>

5.1.9.5.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: <u>"Max35Text" on page 205</u>

5.1.9.5.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: <u>"Max35Text" on page 205</u>

5.1.10   Frequency

5.1.10.1 Frequency36Choice

Definition: Choice of format for a frequency, for example, the frequency of payment.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Type *<Tp>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
Or	Period *<Prd>*	[1..1]			63
	Type *<Tp>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
	CountPerPeriod *<CntPerPrd>*	[1..1]	Quantity		64
Or}	PointInTime *<PtInTm>*	[1..1]			64
	Type *<Tp>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
	PointInTime *<PtInTm>*	[1..1]	Text		65

5.1.10.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a frequency in terms of a specified period type.

Datatype: "Frequency6Code" on page 195

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

5.1.10.1.2 Period <Prd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a frequency in terms of a count per period within a specified period type.

Period <Prd> contains the following **FrequencyPeriod1** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type *<Tp>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
	CountPerPeriod *<CntPerPrd>*	[1..1]	Quantity		64

5.1.10.1.2.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Period for which the number of instructions are to be created and processed.

Datatype: "Frequency6Code" on page 195

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

5.1.10.1.2.2 CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Number of instructions to be created and processed during the specified period.

Datatype: "DecimalNumber" on page 202

5.1.10.1.3 PointInTime <PtInTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a frequency in terms of an exact point in time or moment within a specified period type.

PointInTime <PtInTm> contains the following **FrequencyAndMoment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		65

5.1.10.1.3.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Period for which the number of instructions are to be created and processed.

Datatype: "Frequency6Code" on page 195

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

5.1.10.1.3.2 PointInTime <PtInTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Further information on the exact point in time the event should take place.

Datatype: "Exact2NumericText" on page 203

5.1.11　Identification Information

5.1.11.1 GenericIdentification30

Definition: Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		65
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[1..1]	Text		65
	SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]	Text		65

5.1.11.1.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary information, often a code, issued by the data source scheme issuer.

Datatype: "Exact4AlphaNumericText" on page 203

5.1.11.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.11.1.3 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Short textual description of the scheme.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.12　Mandate

5.1.12.1 MandateClassification1Choice

Definition: Specifies the high level purpose of the instruction based on a set of pre-defined categories.

Usage: This is used by the initiating party to provide information concerning the processing of the payment. It is likely to trigger special processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		66
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		66

5.1.12.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

Datatype: "MandateClassification1Code" on page 195

CodeName	Name	Definition
FIXE	Fixed	Direct debit amount is fixed.
USGB	UsageBased	Direct debit amount is based on usage.
VARI	Variable	Direct debit amount is variable.

5.1.12.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.12.2 MandateTypeInformation2

Definition: Set of elements used to further detail the information related to the type of payment.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			66
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		67
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			67
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		67
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			67
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		68
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		68
	Classification <Clssfctn>	[0..1]	±		68

5.1.12.2.1 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agreement under which or rules under which the mandate resides.

ServiceLevel <SvcLvl> contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		67

5.1.12.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

Datatype: "ExternalServiceLevel1Code" on page 194

5.1.12.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.12.2.2 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: User community specific instrument.

Usage: This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

LocalInstrument <LclInstrm> contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		67

5.1.12.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

Datatype: "ExternalLocalInstrument1Code" on page 192

5.1.12.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.12.2.3 CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the high level purpose of the mandate based on a set of pre-defined categories.

CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp> contains one of the following **CategoryPurpose1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		68
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		68

5.1.12.2.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

Datatype: "ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code" on page 191

5.1.12.2.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.12.2.4 Classification <Clssfctn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Type of direct debit instruction.

Classification <Clssfctn> contains one of the following elements (see "MandateClassification1Choice" on page 65 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		66
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		66

5.1.13 Miscellaneous

5.1.13.1 SupplementaryData1

Definition: Additional information that can not be captured in the structured fields and/or any other specific block.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName *<PlcAndNm>*	[0..1]	Text		69
	Envelope *<Envlp>*	[1..1]	(External Schema)		69

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

  This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

5.1.13.1.1 PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous reference to the location where the supplementary data must be inserted in the message instance.

In the case of XML, this is expressed by a valid XPath.

Datatype: "Max350Text" on page 205

5.1.13.1.2 Envelope <Envlp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Technical element wrapping the supplementary data.

Type: (External Schema)

Technical component that contains the validated supplementary data information. This technical envelope allows to segregate the supplementary data information from any other information.

5.1.13.2 OriginalTransactionReference35

Definition: Specifies key elements as defined in the original transaction.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InterbankSettlementAmount *<IntrBkSttlmAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	72
	Amount *<Amt>*	[0..1]	±		72
	InterbankSettlementDate *<IntrBkSttlmDt>*	[0..1]	Date		73
	RequestedCollectionDate *<ReqdColltnDt>*	[0..1]	Date		73
	RequestedExecutionDate *<ReqdExctnDt>*	[0..1]	±		73
	CreditorSchemeIdentification *<CdtrSchmeId>*	[0..1]	±		73
	SettlementInformation *<SttlmInf>*	[0..1]		C15, C16, C21, C22, C23, C24, C29, C30	73
	SettlementMethod *<SttlmMtd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		75
	SettlementAccount *<SttlmAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	76
	ClearingSystem *<ClrSys>*	[0..1]			76
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		77
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		77
	InstructingReimbursementAgent *<InstgRmbrsmntAgt>*	[0..1]	±		77
	InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount *<InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	77
	InstructedReimbursementAgent *<InstdRmbrsmntAgt>*	[0..1]	±		78
	InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount *<InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	78
	ThirdReimbursementAgent *<ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>*	[0..1]	±		79
	ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount *<ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	79
	PaymentTypeInformation *<PmtTpInf>*	[0..1]	±		80
	PaymentMethod *<PmtMtd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		81
	MandateRelatedInformation *<MndtRltdInf>*	[0..1]			81
{Or	DirectDebitMandate *<DrctDbtMndt>*	[0..1]		C2, C3	83
	MandateIdentification *<MndtId>*	[0..1]	Text		85
	DateOfSignature *<DtOfSgntr>*	[0..1]	Date		85
	AmendmentIndicator *<AmdmntInd>*	[0..1]	Indicator		85
	AmendmentInformationDetails *<AmdmntInfDtls>*	[0..1]			85

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMandateIdentification <*OrgnlMndtId*>	[0..1]	Text		86
	OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <*OrgnlCdtrSchmeId*>	[0..1]	±		86
	OriginalCreditorAgent <*OrgnlCdtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		87
	OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <*OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	87
	OriginalDebtor <*OrgnlDbtr*>	[0..1]	±		88
	OriginalDebtorAccount <*OrgnlDbtrAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	88
	OriginalDebtorAgent <*OrgnlDbtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		89
	OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <*OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	89
	OriginalFinalCollectionDate <*OrgnlFnlColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		90
	OriginalFrequency <*OrgnlFrqcy*>	[0..1]	±		90
	OriginalReason <*OrgnlRsn*>	[0..1]			90
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		91
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		91
	OriginalTrackingDays <*OrgnlTrckgDays*>	[0..1]	Text		91
	ElectronicSignature <*ElctrncSgntr*>	[0..1]	Text		91
	FirstCollectionDate <*FrstColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		91
	FinalCollectionDate <*FnlColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		91
	Frequency <*Frqcy*>	[0..1]	±		91
	Reason <*Rsn*>	[0..1]			92
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		92
	TrackingDays <*TrckgDays*>	[0..1]	Text		92
Or}	CreditTransferMandate <*CdtTrfMndt*>	[0..1]	±		92
	RemittanceInformation <*RmtInf*>	[0..1]	±		93
	UltimateDebtor <*UltmtDbtr*>	[0..1]	±		93
	Debtor <*Dbtr*>	[0..1]	±		93
	DebtorAccount <*DbtrAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	94
	DebtorAgent <*DbtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		94
	DebtorAgentAccount <*DbtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	95

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CreditorAgent *<CdtrAgt>*	[0..1]	±		95
	CreditorAgentAccount *<CdtrAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	96
	Creditor *<Cdtr>*	[0..1]	±		96
	CreditorAccount *<CdtrAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	97
	UltimateCreditor *<UltmtCdtr>*	[0..1]	±		97
	Purpose *<Purp>*	[0..1]	±		98

5.1.13.2.1 InterbankSettlementAmount <IntrBkSttlmAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money moved between the instructing agent and the instructed agent.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

* **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

* **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.13.2.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Amount <Amt> contains one of the following elements (see "AmountType4Choice" on page 47 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	InstructedAmount *<InstdAmt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	47
Or}	EquivalentAmount *<EqvtAmt>*	[1..1]			48
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	48
	CurrencyOfTransfer *<CcyOfTrf>*	[1..1]	CodeSet	C1	48

5.1.13.2.3 InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the amount of money ceases to be available to the agent that owes it and when the amount of money becomes available to the agent to which it is due.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.13.2.4 RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the creditor requests that the amount of money is to be collected from the debtor.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.13.2.5 RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date at which the initiating party requests the clearing agent to process the payment.

Usage: This is the date on which the debtor's account is to be debited. If payment by cheque, the date when the cheque must be generated by the bank.

RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt> contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 50 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date *<Dt>*	[1..1]	Date		50
Or}	DateTime *<DtTm>*	[1..1]	DateTime		50

5.1.13.2.6 CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Credit party that signs the mandate.

CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeId> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 108 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		108
	PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		108
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		109
	CountryOfResidence *<CtryOfRes>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	109
	ContactDetails *<CtctDtls>*	[0..1]	±		110

5.1.13.2.7 SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the details on how the settlement of the original transaction(s) between the instructing agent and the instructed agent was completed.

Impacted by: C15 "InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule", C16 "InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule", C21 "SettlementMethodAgentRule", C22 "SettlementMethodClearingRule", C23 "SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule", C24 "SettlementMethodCoverRule", C29 "ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule", C30 "ThirdReimbursementAgentRule"

SettlementInformation <SttlmInf> contains the following **SettlementInstruction11** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SettlementMethod <*SttlmMtd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		75
	SettlementAccount <*SttlmAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	76
	ClearingSystem <*ClrSys*>	[0..1]			76
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		77
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		77
	InstructingReimbursementAgent <*InstgRmbrsmntAgt*>	[0..1]	±		77
	InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <*InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	77
	InstructedReimbursementAgent <*InstdRmbrsmntAgt*>	[0..1]	±		78
	InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <*InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	78
	ThirdReimbursementAgent <*ThrdRmbrsmntAgt*>	[0..1]	±		79
	ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <*ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	79

Constraints

- **InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

  If InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructedReimbursementAgent must be present.

  ```
  On Condition
      /InstructedReimbursementAgent is absent
  Following Must be True
      /InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount Must be absent
  ```

- **InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

  If InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

  ```
  On Condition
      /InstructingReimbursementAgent is absent
  Following Must be True
      /InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount Must be absent
  ```

- **SettlementMethodAgentRule**

  If SettlementMethod is equal to INDA or INGA, then ReimbursementAgent(s) and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

```
On Condition
    /SettlementMethod is equal to value 'InstructingAgent'
 Or    /SettlementMethod is equal to value 'InstructedAgent'
Following Must be True
    /ClearingSystem Must be absent
 And    /InstructingReimbursementAgent Must be absent
 And    /InstructedReimbursementAgent Must be absent
 And    /ThirdReimbursementAgent Must be absent
```

- **SettlementMethodClearingRule**

  If SettlementMethod is equal to CLRG, then SettlementAccount and ReimbursementAgent(s) are not allowed.

```
On Condition
    /SettlementMethod is equal to value 'ClearingSystem'
Following Must be True
    /SettlementAccount Must be absent
 And    /InstructingReimbursementAgent Must be absent
 And    /InstructedReimbursementAgent Must be absent
 And    /ThirdReimbursementAgent Must be absent
```

- **SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule**

  If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then InstructedReimbursementAgent or InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

```
On Condition
    /SettlementMethod is equal to value 'CoverMethod'
Following Must be True
    /InstructingReimbursementAgent Must be present
 Or    /InstructedReimbursementAgent Must be present
```

- **SettlementMethodCoverRule**

  If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then SettlementAccount and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

```
On Condition
    /SettlementMethod is equal to value 'CoverMethod'
Following Must be True
    /SettlementAccount Must be absent
 And    /ClearingSystem Must be absent
```

- **ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

  If ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then ThirdReimbursementAgent must be present.

```
On Condition
    /ThirdReimbursementAgent is absent
Following Must be True
    /ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount Must be absent
```

- **ThirdReimbursementAgentRule**

  If ThirdReimbursementAgent is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent and InstructedReimbursementAgent must both be present.

```
On Condition
    /ThirdReimbursementAgent is present
Following Must be True
    /InstructingReimbursementAgent Must be present
 And    /InstructedReimbursementAgent Must be present
```

5.1.13.2.7.1 SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Method used to settle the (batch of) payment instructions.

Datatype: "SettlementMethod1Code" on page 198

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	InstructedAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructed to execute a payment instruction.
INGA	InstructingAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructing and forwarding the payment to the next party in the payment chain.
COVE	CoverMethod	Settlement is done through a cover payment.
CLRG	ClearingSystem	Settlement is done through a payment clearing system.

5.1.13.2.7.2 SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: A specific purpose account used to post debit and credit entries as a result of the transaction.

Impacted by: C14 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C13 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		42
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  ```
  Following Must be True
      /Identification Must be present
   Or    /Proxy Must be present
  ```

5.1.13.2.7.3 ClearingSystem <ClrSys>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

ClearingSystem <ClrSys> contains one of the following **ClearingSystemIdentification3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		77
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		77

5.1.13.2.7.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Infrastructure through which the payment instruction is processed, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

Datatype: "ExternalCashClearingSystem1Code" on page 190

5.1.13.2.7.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Clearing system identification in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.13.2.7.4 InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent through which the instructing agent will reimburse the instructed agent.

Usage: If InstructingAgent and InstructedAgent have the same reimbursement agent, then only InstructingReimbursementAgent must be used.

InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <*FinInstnId*>	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification <*BrnchId*>	[0..1]	±		61

5.1.13.2.7.5 InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the instructing reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: C14 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C13 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		42
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  ```
  Following Must be True
       /Identification Must be present
   Or    /Proxy Must be present
  ```

5.1.13.2.7.6 InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent at which the instructed agent will be reimbursed.

Usage: If InstructedReimbursementAgent contains a branch of the InstructedAgent, then the party in InstructedAgent will claim reimbursement from that branch/will be paid by that branch.

Usage: If InstructingAgent and InstructedAgent have the same reimbursement agent, then only InstructingReimbursementAgent must be used.

InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		61

5.1.13.2.7.7 InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the instructed reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: C14 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C13 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		42
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  ```
  Following Must be True
      /Identification Must be present
   Or   /Proxy Must be present
  ```

5.1.13.2.7.8 ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent at which the instructed agent will be reimbursed.

Usage: If ThirdReimbursementAgent contains a branch of the InstructedAgent, then the party in InstructedAgent will claim reimbursement from that branch/will be paid by that branch.

ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]	±		61

5.1.13.2.7.9 ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the third reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: C14 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C13 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency <*Ccy*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy <*Prxy*>	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  ```
  Following Must be True
       /Identification Must be present
   Or     /Proxy Must be present
  ```

5.1.13.2.8 PaymentTypeInformation <PmtTpInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to further specify the type of transaction.

PaymentTypeInformation <PmtTpInf> contains the following elements (see "PaymentTypeInformation27" on page 122 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructionPriority <InstrPrty>	[0..1]	CodeSet		123
	ClearingChannel <ClrChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		123
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..*]			124
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		124
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			124
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		124
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		125
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			125
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		125
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		125

5.1.13.2.9 PaymentMethod <PmtMtd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the means of payment that will be used to move the amount of money.

Datatype: "PaymentMethod4Code" on page 196

CodeName	Name	Definition
CHK	Cheque	Written order to a bank to pay a certain amount of money from one person to another person.
TRF	CreditTransfer	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer.
DD	DirectDebit	Collection of an amount of money from the debtor's bank account by the creditor. The amount of money and dates of collections may vary.
TRA	TransferAdvice	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer. An advice should be sent back to the account owner.

5.1.13.2.10 MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details of the mandate signed between the creditor and the debtor.

MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf> contains one of the following
MandateRelatedData2Choice elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>	[0..1]		C2, C3	83
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		85
	DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		85
	AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		85
	AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>	[0..1]			85
	OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[0..1]	Text		86
	OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeId>	[0..1]	±		86
	OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		87
	OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	87
	OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>	[0..1]	±		88
	OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	88
	OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		89
	OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	89
	OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		90
	OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>	[0..1]	±		90
	OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>	[0..1]			90
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		91
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		91
	OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		91
	ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>	[0..1]	Text		91
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		91
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		91
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		91
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			92
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		92
	TrackingDays <TrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		92
Or}	CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>	[0..1]	±		92

5.1.13.2.10.1 DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specific direct debit mandate data.

Impacted by: <u>C2 "AmendmentIndicatorFalseRule"</u>, <u>C3 "AmendmentIndicatorTrueRule"</u>

DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt> contains the following **MandateRelatedInformation15** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MandateIdentification <*MndtId*>	[0..1]	Text		85
	DateOfSignature <*DtOfSgntr*>	[0..1]	Date		85
	AmendmentIndicator <*AmdmntInd*>	[0..1]	Indicator		85
	AmendmentInformationDetails <*AmdmntInfDtls*>	[0..1]			85
	OriginalMandateIdentification <*OrgnlMndtId*>	[0..1]	Text		86
	OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <*OrgnlCdtrSchmeId*>	[0..1]	±		86
	OriginalCreditorAgent <*OrgnlCdtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		87
	OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <*OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	87
	OriginalDebtor <*OrgnlDbtr*>	[0..1]	±		88
	OriginalDebtorAccount <*OrgnlDbtrAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	88
	OriginalDebtorAgent <*OrgnlDbtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		89
	OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <*OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	89
	OriginalFinalCollectionDate <*OrgnlFnlColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		90
	OriginalFrequency <*OrgnlFrqcy*>	[0..1]	±		90
	OriginalReason <*OrgnlRsn*>	[0..1]			90
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		91
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		91
	OriginalTrackingDays <*OrgnlTrckgDays*>	[0..1]	Text		91
	ElectronicSignature <*ElctrncSgntr*>	[0..1]	Text		91
	FirstCollectionDate <*FrstColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		91
	FinalCollectionDate <*FnlColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		91
	Frequency <*Frqcy*>	[0..1]	±		91
	Reason <*Rsn*>	[0..1]			92
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		92
	TrackingDays <*TrckgDays*>	[0..1]	Text		92

Constraints

• **AmendmentIndicatorFalseRule**

If AmendmentIndicator is false, then AmendmentInformationDetails is not allowed.

```
On Condition
    /AmendmentIndicator is equal to value 'false'
Following Must be True
    /AmendmentInformationDetails Must be absent
```

- **AmendmentIndicatorTrueRule**

   If AmendmentIndicator is true, then AmendmentInformationDetails must be present.

```
On Condition
    /AmendmentIndicator is equal to value 'true'
Following Must be True
    /AmendmentInformationDetails Must be present
```

5.1.13.2.10.1.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.13.2.10.1.2 DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the direct debit mandate has been signed by the debtor.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.13.2.10.1.3 AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicator notifying whether the underlying mandate is amended or not.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 202):

- *Meaning When True:* True

- *Meaning When False:* False

5.1.13.2.10.1.4 AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: List of mandate elements that have been modified.

AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls> contains the following
AmendmentInformationDetails14 elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMandateIdentification *<OrgnlMndtId>*	[0..1]	Text		86
	OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification *<OrgnlCdtrSchmeId>*	[0..1]	±		86
	OriginalCreditorAgent *<OrgnlCdtrAgt>*	[0..1]	±		87
	OriginalCreditorAgentAccount *<OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	87
	OriginalDebtor *<OrgnlDbtr>*	[0..1]	±		88
	OriginalDebtorAccount *<OrgnlDbtrAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	88
	OriginalDebtorAgent *<OrgnlDbtrAgt>*	[0..1]	±		89
	OriginalDebtorAgentAccount *<OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	C14, C13	89
	OriginalFinalCollectionDate *<OrgnlFnlColltnDt>*	[0..1]	Date		90
	OriginalFrequency *<OrgnlFrqcy>*	[0..1]	±		90
	OriginalReason *<OrgnlRsn>*	[0..1]			90
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		91
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		91
	OriginalTrackingDays *<OrgnlTrckgDays>*	[0..1]	Text		91

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.1 OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the original mandate.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.2 OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original creditor scheme identification that has been modified.

OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeId> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 108 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
	PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		108
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	±		109
	CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	109
	ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		110

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.3 OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original creditor agent that has been modified.

OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <*FinInstnId*>	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification <*BrnchId*>	[0..1]	±		61

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.4 OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original creditor agent account that has been modified.

Impacted by: C14 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C13 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency <*Ccy*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy <*Prxy*>	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

• **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

• **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
    /Identification Must be present
 Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.5 OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original debtor that has been modified.

OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 108 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
	PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		108
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	±		109
	CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	109
	ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		110

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.6 OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original debtor account that has been modified.

Impacted by: C14 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C13 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency <*Ccy*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy <*Prxy*>	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  ```
  Following Must be True
       /Identification Must be present
   Or     /Proxy Must be present
  ```

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.7 OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original debtor agent that has been modified.

OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]	±		61

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.8 OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original debtor agent account that has been modified.

Impacted by: C14 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C13 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		42
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  ```
  Following Must be True
       /Identification Must be present
   Or    /Proxy Must be present
  ```

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.9 OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original final collection date that has been modified.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.10 OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original frequency that has been modified.

OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy> contains one of the following elements (see "Frequency36Choice" on page 62 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
Or	Period <Prd>	[1..1]			63
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
	CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		64
Or}	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]			64
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		65

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.11 OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original reason for the mandate to allow the user to distinguish between different mandates for the same creditor.

OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn> contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		91
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		91

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.11.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: "ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code" on page 192

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.13.2.10.1.4.12 OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original number of tracking days that has been modified.

Datatype: "Exact2NumericText" on page 203

5.1.13.2.10.1.5 ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Additional security provisions, such as a digital signature, as provided by the debtor.

Datatype: "Max1025Text" on page 203

5.1.13.2.10.1.6 FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the first collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.13.2.10.1.7 FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the final collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.13.2.10.1.8 Frequency <Frqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Regularity with which direct debit instructions are to be created and processed.

Frequency <Frqcy> contains one of the following elements (see "Frequency36Choice" on page 62 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
Or	Period <Prd>	[1..1]			63
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
	CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		64
Or}	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]			64
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		65

5.1.13.2.10.1.9 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reason for the direct debit mandate to allow the user to distinguish between different mandates for the same creditor.

Reason <Rsn> contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		92

5.1.13.2.10.1.9.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: "ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code" on page 192

5.1.13.2.10.1.9.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.13.2.10.1.10 TrackingDays <TrckgDays>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the number of days the direct debit instruction must be tracked.

Datatype: "Exact2NumericText" on page 203

5.1.13.2.10.2 CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specific credit transfer mandate data.

CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt> contains the following elements (see "CreditTransferMandateData1" on page 51 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		51
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		51
	DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		52
	DateOfVerification <DtOfVrfctn>	[0..1]	DateTime		52
	ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>	[0..1]	Binary		52
	FirstPaymentDate <FrstPmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		52
	FinalPaymentDate <FnlPmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		52
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		53
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			53
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		53
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		53

5.1.13.2.11 RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching of an entry with the items that the transfer is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system.

RemittanceInformation <RmtInf> contains the following elements (see "RemittanceInformation21" on page 177 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		177
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		177

5.1.13.2.12 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr> contains one of the following elements (see "Party40Choice" on page 120 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		121
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		121

5.1.13.2.13 Debtor <Dbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

Debtor <Dbtr> contains one of the following elements (see "Party40Choice" on page 120 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <*Pty*>	[1..1]	±		121
Or}	Agent <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		121

5.1.13.2.14 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

Impacted by: C14 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C13 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency <*Ccy*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy <*Prxy*>	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  ```
  Following Must be True
      /Identification Must be present
   Or    /Proxy Must be present
  ```

5.1.13.2.15 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]	±		61

5.1.13.2.16 DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor agent at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: C14 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C13 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		42
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  ```
  Following Must be True
      /Identification Must be present
   Or    /Proxy Must be present
  ```

5.1.13.2.17 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <*FinInstnId*>	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification <*BrnchId*>	[0..1]	±		61

5.1.13.2.18 CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor agent at its servicing agent to which a credit entry will be made as a result of the payment transaction.

Impacted by: C14 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C13 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency <*Ccy*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy <*Prxy*>	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  ```
  Following Must be True
       /Identification Must be present
   Or    /Proxy Must be present
  ```

5.1.13.2.19 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party to which an amount of money is due.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains one of the following elements (see "Party40Choice" on page 120 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		121
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		121

5.1.13.2.20 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

Impacted by: C14 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C13 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 41 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		42
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		42
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C1	42
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		43
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		43

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
    /Identification Must be present
 Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

5.1.13.2.21 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr> contains one of the following elements (see "Party40Choice" on page 120 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		121
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		121

5.1.13.2.22 Purpose <Purp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage:

Purpose is used by the end customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Purpose <Purp> contains one of the following elements (see "Purpose2Choice" on page 98 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		98

5.1.13.3 Purpose2Choice

Definition: Specifies the underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage: Purpose is used by the end-customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		98

5.1.13.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Underlying reason for the payment transaction, as published in an external purpose code list.

Datatype: "ExternalPurpose1Code" on page 194

5.1.13.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Purpose, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.13.4 OriginalBusinessQuery1

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original requestor, to unambiguously identify the business query message.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification *<MsgId>*	[1..1]	Text		99
	MessageNameIdentification *<MsgNmId>*	[0..1]	Text		99
	CreationDateTime *<CreDtTm>*	[0..1]	DateTime		99

5.1.13.4.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the original initiating party, to unambiguously identify the original query message.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.13.4.2 MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the query message name identifier to which the message refers.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.13.4.3 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 200

5.1.13.5 OriginalGroupInformation29

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identifier of the group of transactions as assigned by the original instructing party.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMessageIdentification *<OrgnlMsgId>*	[1..1]	Text		99
	OriginalMessageNameIdentification *<OrgnlMsgNmId>*	[1..1]	Text		100
	OriginalCreationDateTime *<OrgnlCreDtTm>*	[0..1]	DateTime		100

5.1.13.5.1 OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference assigned by the original instructing party to unambiguously identify the original message.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.13.5.2 OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the original message name identifier to which the message refers, for example, pacs.003.001.01 or MT103.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.13.5.3 OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 200

5.1.13.6 NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus5

Definition: Set of elements used to provide detailed information on the number of transactions that are reported with a specific transaction status.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DetailedNumberOfTransactions *<DtldNbOfTxs>*	[1..1]	Text		100
	DetailedStatus *<DtldSts>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		100
	DetailedControlSum *<DtldCtrlSum>*	[0..1]	Quantity		100

5.1.13.6.1 DetailedNumberOfTransactions <DtldNbOfTxs>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Number of individual transactions contained in the message, detailed per status.

Datatype: "Max15NumericText" on page 204

5.1.13.6.2 DetailedStatus <DtldSts>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Common transaction status for all individual transactions reported.

Datatype: "ExternalPaymentTransactionStatus1Code" on page 193

5.1.13.6.3 DetailedControlSum <DtldCtrlSum>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total of all individual amounts included in the message, irrespective of currencies, detailed per status.

Datatype: "DecimalNumber" on page 202

5.1.13.7 RemittanceAmount2

Definition: Nature of the amount and currency on a document referred to in the remittance section, typically either the original amount due/payable or the amount actually remitted for the referenced document.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount *<DuePyblAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	101
	DiscountAppliedAmount *<DscntApldAmt>*	[0..*]			102
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			102
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		102
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	102
	CreditNoteAmount *<CdtNoteAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	103
	TaxAmount *<TaxAmt>*	[0..*]			103
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			103
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		104
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		104
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	104
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason *<AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>*	[0..*]			104
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	105
	CreditDebitIndicator *<CdtDbtInd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		105
	Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]	Text		105
	AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..1]	Text		105
	RemittedAmount *<RmtdAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	106

5.1.13.7.1 DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount specified is the exact amount due and payable to the creditor.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.13.7.2 DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Amount specified for the referred document is the amount of discount to be applied to the amount due and payable to the creditor.

DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt> contains the following **DiscountAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			102
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		102
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	102

5.1.13.7.2.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of the amount.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **DiscountAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		102

5.1.13.7.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

Datatype: "ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code" on page 191

5.1.13.7.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.13.7.2.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money, which has been typed.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.13.7.3 CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount specified for the referred document is the amount of a credit note.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.13.7.4 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Quantity of cash resulting from the calculation of the tax.

TaxAmount <TaxAmt> contains the following **TaxAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			103
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		104
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		104
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	104

5.1.13.7.4.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of the amount.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **TaxAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		104
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		104

5.1.13.7.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

Datatype: "ExternalTaxAmountType1Code" on page 195

5.1.13.7.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.13.7.4.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money, which has been typed.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.13.7.5 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the document adjustment.

AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn> contains the following
DocumentAdjustment1 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	105
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		105
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		105
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		105

5.1.13.7.5.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money of the document adjustment.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.13.7.5.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 188

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

5.1.13.7.5.3 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

Datatype: "Max4Text" on page 206

5.1.13.7.5.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details on the document adjustment.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.13.7.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money remitted for the referred document.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.14   Organisation Identification

5.1.14.1 OrganisationIdentification29

Definition: Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	106
	LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		107
	Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			107
	Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		107
	SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			107
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		107
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		108
	Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		108

5.1.14.1.1 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Business identification code of the organisation.

Impacted by: C4 "AnyBIC"

Datatype: "AnyBICDec2014Identifier" on page 200

Constraints

- **AnyBIC**

  Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

5.1.14.1.2 LEI <LEI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal entity identification as an alternate identification for a party.

Datatype: "LEIIdentifier" on page 201

5.1.14.1.3 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Unique identification of an organisation, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericOrganisationIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		107
	SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			107
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		107
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		108
	Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		108

5.1.14.1.3.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification assigned by an institution.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.14.1.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **OrganisationIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		107
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		108

5.1.14.1.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code" on page 193

5.1.14.1.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.14.1.3.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.15 Party Identification

5.1.15.1 PartyIdentification135

Definition: Specifies the identification of a person or an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
	PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		108
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	±		109
	CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	109
	ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		110

5.1.15.1.1 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.15.1.2 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstlAdr> contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress24" on page 134 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <*AdrTp*>	[0..1]			135
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	±		136
	Department <*Dept*>	[0..1]	Text		136
	SubDepartment <*SubDept*>	[0..1]	Text		136
	StreetName <*StrtNm*>	[0..1]	Text		136
	BuildingNumber <*BldgNb*>	[0..1]	Text		136
	BuildingName <*BldgNm*>	[0..1]	Text		137
	Floor <*Flr*>	[0..1]	Text		137
	PostBox <*PstBx*>	[0..1]	Text		137
	Room <*Room*>	[0..1]	Text		137
	PostCode <*PstCd*>	[0..1]	Text		137
	TownName <*TwnNm*>	[0..1]	Text		137
	TownLocationName <*TwnLctnNm*>	[0..1]	Text		137
	DistrictName <*DstrctNm*>	[0..1]	Text		137
	CountrySubDivision <*CtrySubDvsn*>	[0..1]	Text		138
	Country <*Ctry*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	138
	AddressLine <*AdrLine*>	[0..7]	Text		138

5.1.15.1.3 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a party.

Identification <Id> contains one of the following elements (see "Party38Choice" on page 119 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]	±		119
Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]	±		120

5.1.15.1.4 CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Country in which a person resides (the place of a person's home). In the case of a company, it is the country from which the affairs of that company are directed.

Impacted by: C6 "Country"

Datatype: "CountryCode" on page 188

Constraints

- **Country**

   The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

5.1.15.1.5 ContactDetails <CtctDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to indicate how to contact the party.

ContactDetails <CtctDtls> contains the following elements (see "Contact4" on page 131 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <*NmPrfx*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		132
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		132
	PhoneNumber <*PhneNb*>	[0..1]	Text		132
	MobileNumber <*MobNb*>	[0..1]	Text		133
	FaxNumber <*FaxNb*>	[0..1]	Text		133
	EmailAddress <*EmailAdr*>	[0..1]	Text		133
	EmailPurpose <*EmailPurp*>	[0..1]	Text		133
	JobTitle <*JobTitl*>	[0..1]	Text		133
	Responsibility <*Rspnsblty*>	[0..1]	Text		133
	Department <*Dept*>	[0..1]	Text		133
	Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			133
	ChannelType <*ChanlTp*>	[1..1]	Text		134
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	Text		134
	PreferredMethod <*PrefrdMtd*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		134

5.1.15.2 PartyIdentification272

Definition: Specifies the identification of a person or an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		111
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			112
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			113
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	114
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			114
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		115
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			115
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		115
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		115
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			115
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			116
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		116
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		116
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		117
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C6	117
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			117
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		117
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			117
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		118
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		118
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	118
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		118

5.1.15.2.1 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.15.2.2 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstlAdr> contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress27" on page 138 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <*AdrTp*>	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	±		140
	CareOf <*CareOf*>	[0..1]	Text		140
	Department <*Dept*>	[0..1]	Text		140
	SubDepartment <*SubDept*>	[0..1]	Text		140
	StreetName <*StrtNm*>	[0..1]	Text		140
	BuildingNumber <*BldgNb*>	[0..1]	Text		141
	BuildingName <*BldgNm*>	[0..1]	Text		141
	Floor <*Flr*>	[0..1]	Text		141
	UnitNumber <*UnitNb*>	[0..1]	Text		141
	PostBox <*PstBx*>	[0..1]	Text		141
	Room <*Room*>	[0..1]	Text		141
	PostCode <*PstCd*>	[0..1]	Text		141
	TownName <*TwnNm*>	[0..1]	Text		141
	TownLocationName <*TwnLctnNm*>	[0..1]	Text		142
	DistrictName <*DstrctNm*>	[0..1]	Text		142
	CountrySubDivision <*CtrySubDvsn*>	[0..1]	Text		142
	Country <*Ctry*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	142
	AddressLine <*AdrLine*>	[0..7]	Text		142

5.1.15.2.3 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a party.

Identification <Id> contains one of the following **Party52Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			113
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	114
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			114
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		115
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			115
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		115
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		115
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			115
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			116
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		116
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		116
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		117
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C6	117
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			117
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		117
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			117
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		118
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		118

5.1.15.2.3.1 OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

OrganisationIdentification <OrgId> contains the following **OrganisationIdentification39** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC *<AnyBIC>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	114
	LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
	Other *<Othr>*	[0..*]			114
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		115
	SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			115
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		115
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		115

5.1.15.2.3.1.1 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Business identification code of the organisation.

Impacted by: C4 "AnyBIC"

Datatype: "AnyBICDec2014Identifier" on page 200

Constraints

- **AnyBIC**

  Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

5.1.15.2.3.1.2 LEI <LEI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal entity identification as an alternate identification for a party.

Datatype: "LEIIdentifier" on page 201

5.1.15.2.3.1.3 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Unique identification of an organisation, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericOrganisationIdentification3** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		115
	SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			115
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		115
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		115

5.1.15.2.3.1.3.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification assigned by an institution.

Datatype: "Max256Text" on page 205

5.1.15.2.3.1.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **OrganisationIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		115

5.1.15.2.3.1.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code" on page 193

5.1.15.2.3.1.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.15.2.3.1.3.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.15.2.3.2 PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person, for example a passport.

PrivateIdentification <PrvtId> contains the following **PersonIdentification18** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth *<DtAndPlcOfBirth>*	[0..1]			116
	BirthDate *<BirthDt>*	[1..1]	Date		116
	ProvinceOfBirth *<PrvcOfBirth>*	[0..1]	Text		116
	CityOfBirth *<CityOfBirth>*	[1..1]	Text		117
	CountryOfBirth *<CtryOfBirth>*	[1..1]	CodeSet	C6	117
	Other *<Othr>*	[0..*]			117
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		117
	SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			117
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		118
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		118

5.1.15.2.3.2.1 DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and place of birth of a person.

DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth> contains the following **DateAndPlaceOfBirth1** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BirthDate *<BirthDt>*	[1..1]	Date		116
	ProvinceOfBirth *<PrvcOfBirth>*	[0..1]	Text		116
	CityOfBirth *<CityOfBirth>*	[1..1]	Text		117
	CountryOfBirth *<CtryOfBirth>*	[1..1]	CodeSet	C6	117

5.1.15.2.3.2.1.1 BirthDate <BirthDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date on which a person is born.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.15.2.3.2.1.2 ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Province where a person was born.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.15.2.3.2.1.3 CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: City where a person was born.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.15.2.3.2.1.4 CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Country where a person was born.

Impacted by: C6 "Country"

Datatype: "CountryCode" on page 188

Constraints

- **Country**

    The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

5.1.15.2.3.2.2 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Unique identification of a person, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericPersonIdentification2** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		117
	SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			117
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		118
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		118

5.1.15.2.3.2.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

Datatype: "Max256Text" on page 205

5.1.15.2.3.2.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following
PersonIdentificationSchemeName1Choice elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		118

5.1.15.2.3.2.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalPersonIdentification1Code" on page 193

5.1.15.2.3.2.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.15.2.3.2.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.15.2.4 CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Country in which a person resides (the place of a person's home). In the case of a company, it is the country from which the affairs of that company are directed.

Impacted by: C6 "Country"

Datatype: "CountryCode" on page 188

Constraints

• **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

5.1.15.2.5 ContactDetails <CtctDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to indicate how to contact the party.

ContactDetails <CtctDtls> contains the following elements (see "Contact13" on page 128 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		129
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		129
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		129
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		130
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		130
	URLAddress <URLAdr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		130
	JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Responsibility <Rspnsblty>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			131
	ChannelType <ChanlTp>	[1..1]	Text		131
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		131
	PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		131

5.1.15.3 Party38Choice

Definition: Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]	±		119
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]	±		120

5.1.15.3.1 OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

OrganisationIdentification <OrgId> contains the following elements (see "OrganisationIdentification29" on page 106 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC *<AnyBIC>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	106
	LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		107
	Other *<Othr>*	[0..*]			107
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		107
	SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			107
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		107
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		108
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		108

5.1.15.3.2 PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person, for example a passport.

PrivateIdentification <PrvtId> contains the following elements (see "PersonIdentification13" on page 126 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth *<DtAndPlcOfBirth>*	[0..1]			126
	BirthDate *<BirthDt>*	[1..1]	Date		126
	ProvinceOfBirth *<PrvcOfBirth>*	[0..1]	Text		126
	CityOfBirth *<CityOfBirth>*	[1..1]	Text		127
	CountryOfBirth *<CtryOfBirth>*	[1..1]	CodeSet	C6	127
	Other *<Othr>*	[0..*]			127
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		127
	SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			127
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		128
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		128
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		128

5.1.15.4 Party40Choice

Definition: Identification of a person, an organisation or a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		121
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		121

5.1.15.4.1 Party <Pty>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a person or an organisation.

Party <Pty> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 108 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		108
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		108
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		109
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	109
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		110

5.1.15.4.2 Agent <Agt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a financial institution.

Agent <Agt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification6" on page 60 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		60
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		61

5.1.16   Payment

5.1.16.1 SettlementTimeRequest2

Definition: Provides information on the requested settlement time(s) of the payment instruction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CLSTime <CLSTm>	[0..1]	Time		122
	TillTime <TillTm>	[0..1]	Time		122
	FromTime <FrTm>	[0..1]	Time		122
	RejectTime <RjctTm>	[0..1]	Time		122

5.1.16.1.1 CLSTime <CLSTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Time by which the amount of money must be credited, with confirmation, to the CLS Bank's account at the central bank.

Usage: Time must be expressed in Central European Time (CET).

Datatype: "ISOTime" on page 207

5.1.16.1.2 TillTime <TillTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Time until when the payment may be settled.

Datatype: "ISOTime" on page 207

5.1.16.1.3 FromTime <FrTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Time as from when the payment may be settled.

Datatype: "ISOTime" on page 207

5.1.16.1.4 RejectTime <RjctTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Time by when the payment must be settled to avoid rejection.

Datatype: "ISOTime" on page 207

5.1.17　　Payment Type

5.1.17.1 PaymentTypeInformation27

Definition: Provides further details of the type of payment.

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructionPriority <*InstrPrty*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		123
	ClearingChannel <*ClrChanl*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		123
	ServiceLevel <*SvcLvl*>	[0..*]			124
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		124
	LocalInstrument <*LclInstrm*>	[0..1]			124
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		124
	SequenceType <*SeqTp*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		125
	CategoryPurpose <*CtgyPurp*>	[0..1]			125
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		125
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		125

5.1.17.1.1 InstructionPriority <InstrPrty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicator of the urgency or order of importance that the instructing party would like the instructed party to apply to the processing of the instruction.

Datatype: "Priority2Code" on page 197

CodeName	Name	Definition
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

5.1.17.1.2 ClearingChannel <ClrChanl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the clearing channel to be used to process the payment instruction.

Datatype: "ClearingChannel2Code" on page 188

CodeName	Name	Definition
RTGS	RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.
RTNS	RealTimeNetSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.
MPNS	MassPaymentNetSystem	Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system.
BOOK	BookTransfer	Payment through internal book transfer.

5.1.17.1.3 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Agreement under which or rules under which the transaction should be processed.

ServiceLevel <SvcLvl> contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		124

5.1.17.1.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

Datatype: "ExternalServiceLevel1Code" on page 194

5.1.17.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.17.1.4 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: User community specific instrument.

Usage: This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

LocalInstrument <LclInstrm> contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		124

5.1.17.1.4.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

Datatype: "ExternalLocalInstrument1Code" on page 192

5.1.17.1.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.17.1.5 SequenceType <SeqTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the direct debit sequence, such as first, recurrent, final or one-off.

Datatype: "SequenceType3Code" on page 198

CodeName	Name	Definition
FRST	First	First collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
FNAL	Final	Final collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.
RPRE	Represented	Collection used to re-present previously reversed or returned direct debit transactions.

5.1.17.1.6 CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the high level purpose of the instruction based on a set of pre-defined categories.

Usage: This is used by the initiating party to provide information concerning the processing of the payment. It is likely to trigger special processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp> contains one of the following **CategoryPurpose1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		125
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		125

5.1.17.1.6.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

Datatype: "ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code" on page 191

5.1.17.1.6.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.18   Person Identification

5.1.18.1 PersonIdentification13

Definition: Unique and unambiguous way to identify a person.

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			126
	BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		126
	ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		126
	CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		127
	CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C6	127
	Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			127
	Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		127
	SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			127
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		128
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		128
	Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		128

5.1.18.1.1 DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and place of birth of a person.

DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth> contains the following **DateAndPlaceOfBirth1** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		126
	ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		126
	CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		127
	CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C6	127

5.1.18.1.1.1 BirthDate <BirthDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date on which a person is born.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.18.1.1.2 ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Province where a person was born.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.18.1.1.3 CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: City where a person was born.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.18.1.1.4 CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Country where a person was born.

Impacted by: C6 "Country"

Datatype: "CountryCode" on page 188

Constraints

• **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

5.1.18.1.2 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Unique identification of a person, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericPersonIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		127
	SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			127
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		128
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		128
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		128

5.1.18.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.18.1.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following
PersonIdentificationSchemeName1Choice elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		128
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		128

5.1.18.1.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalPersonIdentification1Code" on page 193

5.1.18.1.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.18.1.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.18.2 Contact13

Definition: Specifies the details of the contact person.

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <*NmPrfx*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		129
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		129
	PhoneNumber <*PhneNb*>	[0..1]	Text		129
	MobileNumber <*MobNb*>	[0..1]	Text		130
	FaxNumber <*FaxNb*>	[0..1]	Text		130
	URLAddress <*URLAdr*>	[0..1]	Text		130
	EmailAddress <*EmailAdr*>	[0..1]	Text		130
	EmailPurpose <*EmailPurp*>	[0..1]	Text		130
	JobTitle <*JobTitl*>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Responsibility <*Rspnsblty*>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Department <*Dept*>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			131
	ChannelType <*ChanlTp*>	[1..1]	Text		131
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	Text		131
	PreferredMethod <*PrefrdMtd*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		131

5.1.18.2.1 NamePrefix <NmPrfx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Datatype: "NamePrefix2Code" on page 196

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

5.1.18.2.2 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.18.2.3 PhoneNumber <PhneNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: "PhoneNumber" on page 206

5.1.18.2.4 MobileNumber <MobNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a mobile phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: "PhoneNumber" on page 206

5.1.18.2.5 FaxNumber <FaxNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a FAX number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: "PhoneNumber" on page 206

5.1.18.2.6 URLAddress <URLAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Address for the Universal Resource Locator (URL), for example an address used over the www (HTTP) service.

Datatype: "Max2048Text" on page 205

5.1.18.2.7 EmailAddress <EmailAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Address for electronic mail (e-mail).

Datatype: "Max256Text" on page 205

5.1.18.2.8 EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Purpose for which an email address may be used.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.18.2.9 JobTitle <JobTitl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Title of the function.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.18.2.10 Responsibility <Rspnsblty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Role of a person in an organisation.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.18.2.11 Department <Dept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.18.2.12 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Contact details in another form.

Other <Othr> contains the following **OtherContact1** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ChannelType *<ChanlTp>*	[1..1]	Text		131
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		131

5.1.18.2.12.1 ChannelType <ChanlTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Method used to contact the financial institution's contact for the specific tax region.

Datatype: "Max4Text" on page 206

5.1.18.2.12.2 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Communication value such as phone number or email address.

Datatype: "Max128Text" on page 204

5.1.18.2.13 PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Preferred method used to reach the contact.

Datatype: "PreferredContactMethod2Code" on page 197

CodeName	Name	Definition
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.
ONLI	Online	Preferred method used to reach the contact is online.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.

5.1.18.3 Contact4

Definition: Specifies the details of the contact person.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix *<NmPrfx>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		132
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		132
	PhoneNumber *<PhneNb>*	[0..1]	Text		132
	MobileNumber *<MobNb>*	[0..1]	Text		133
	FaxNumber *<FaxNb>*	[0..1]	Text		133
	EmailAddress *<EmailAdr>*	[0..1]	Text		133
	EmailPurpose *<EmailPurp>*	[0..1]	Text		133
	JobTitle *<JobTitl>*	[0..1]	Text		133
	Responsibility *<Rspnsblty>*	[0..1]	Text		133
	Department *<Dept>*	[0..1]	Text		133
	Other *<Othr>*	[0..*]			133
	ChannelType *<ChanlTp>*	[1..1]	Text		134
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		134
	PreferredMethod *<PrefrdMtd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		134

5.1.18.3.1 NamePrefix <NmPrfx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Datatype: "NamePrefix2Code" on page 196

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

5.1.18.3.2 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.18.3.3 PhoneNumber <PhneNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: "PhoneNumber" on page 206

5.1.18.3.4 MobileNumber <MobNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a mobile phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: "PhoneNumber" on page 206

5.1.18.3.5 FaxNumber <FaxNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a FAX number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: "PhoneNumber" on page 206

5.1.18.3.6 EmailAddress <EmailAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Address for electronic mail (e-mail).

Datatype: "Max2048Text" on page 205

5.1.18.3.7 EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Purpose for which an email address may be used.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.18.3.8 JobTitle <JobTitl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Title of the function.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.18.3.9 Responsibility <Rspnsblty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Role of a person in an organisation.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.18.3.10 Department <Dept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.18.3.11 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Contact details in another form.

Other <Othr> contains the following **OtherContact1** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ChannelType <*ChanlTp*>	[1..1]	Text		134
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	Text		134

5.1.18.3.11.1 ChannelType <ChanlTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Method used to contact the financial institution's contact for the specific tax region.

Datatype: "Max4Text" on page 206

5.1.18.3.11.2 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Communication value such as phone number or email address.

Datatype: "Max128Text" on page 204

5.1.18.3.12 PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Preferred method used to reach the contact.

Datatype: "PreferredContactMethod1Code" on page 196

CodeName	Name	Definition
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.

5.1.19　　　Postal Address

5.1.19.1 PostalAddress24

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType *<AdrTp>*	[0..1]			135
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	±		136
	Department *<Dept>*	[0..1]	Text		136
	SubDepartment *<SubDept>*	[0..1]	Text		136
	StreetName *<StrtNm>*	[0..1]	Text		136
	BuildingNumber *<BldgNb>*	[0..1]	Text		136
	BuildingName *<BldgNm>*	[0..1]	Text		137
	Floor *<Flr>*	[0..1]	Text		137
	PostBox *<PstBx>*	[0..1]	Text		137
	Room *<Room>*	[0..1]	Text		137
	PostCode *<PstCd>*	[0..1]	Text		137
	TownName *<TwnNm>*	[0..1]	Text		137
	TownLocationName *<TwnLctnNm>*	[0..1]	Text		137
	DistrictName *<DstrctNm>*	[0..1]	Text		137
	CountrySubDivision *<CtrySubDvsn>*	[0..1]	Text		138
	Country *<Ctry>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	138
	AddressLine *<AdrLine>*	[0..7]	Text		138

5.1.19.1.1 AddressType <AdrTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the nature of the postal address.

AddressType <AdrTp> contains one of the following **AddressType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	±		136

5.1.19.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of address expressed as a code.

Datatype: "AddressType2Code" on page 187

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.

CodeName	Name	Definition
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

5.1.19.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of address expressed as a proprietary code.

Proprietary <Prtry> contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 65 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		65
	Issuer <*Issr*>	[1..1]	Text		65
	SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]	Text		65

5.1.19.1.2 Department <Dept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.19.1.3 SubDepartment <SubDept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a sub-division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.19.1.4 StreetName <StrtNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of a street or thoroughfare.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.19.1.5 BuildingNumber <BldgNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 204

5.1.19.1.6　BuildingName <BldgNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the building or house.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.19.1.7　Floor <Flr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Floor or storey within a building.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.19.1.8　PostBox <PstBx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Numbered box in a post office, assigned to a person or organisation, where letters are kept until called for.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 204

5.1.19.1.9　Room <Room>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Building room number.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.19.1.10　PostCode <PstCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 204

5.1.19.1.11　TownName <TwnNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.19.1.12　TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specific location name within the town.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.19.1.13　DistrictName <DstrctNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a subdivision within a country sub-division.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.19.1.14 CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a subdivision of a country such as state, region, county.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.19.1.15 Country <Ctry>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Nation with its own government.

Impacted by: C6 "Country"

Datatype: "CountryCode" on page 188

Constraints

- **Country**

  The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

5.1.19.1.16 AddressLine <AdrLine>

Presence: [0..7]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, presented in free format text.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.19.2 PostalAddress27

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType *<AdrTp>*	[0..1]			139
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	±		140
	CareOf *<CareOf>*	[0..1]	Text		140
	Department *<Dept>*	[0..1]	Text		140
	SubDepartment *<SubDept>*	[0..1]	Text		140
	StreetName *<StrtNm>*	[0..1]	Text		140
	BuildingNumber *<BldgNb>*	[0..1]	Text		141
	BuildingName *<BldgNm>*	[0..1]	Text		141
	Floor *<Flr>*	[0..1]	Text		141
	UnitNumber *<UnitNb>*	[0..1]	Text		141
	PostBox *<PstBx>*	[0..1]	Text		141
	Room *<Room>*	[0..1]	Text		141
	PostCode *<PstCd>*	[0..1]	Text		141
	TownName *<TwnNm>*	[0..1]	Text		141
	TownLocationName *<TwnLctnNm>*	[0..1]	Text		142
	DistrictName *<DstrctNm>*	[0..1]	Text		142
	CountrySubDivision *<CtrySubDvsn>*	[0..1]	Text		142
	Country *<Ctry>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	142
	AddressLine *<AdrLine>*	[0..7]	Text		142

5.1.19.2.1 AddressType <AdrTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the nature of the postal address.

AddressType <AdrTp> contains one of the following **AddressType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	±		140

5.1.19.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of address expressed as a code.

Datatype: "AddressType2Code" on page 187

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

5.1.19.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of address expressed as a proprietary code.

Proprietary <Prtry> contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 65 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		65
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[1..1]	Text		65
	SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]	Text		65

5.1.19.2.2 CareOf <CareOf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies an addressee that is accepting the correspondence for the intended recipient. Using care of ensures the correspondence reaches the right recipient rather than getting returned to the sender.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.19.2.3 Department <Dept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.19.2.4 SubDepartment <SubDept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a sub-division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.19.2.5 StreetName <StrtNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of a street or thoroughfare.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.19.2.6 BuildingNumber <BldgNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 204

5.1.19.2.7 BuildingName <BldgNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the building or house.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.19.2.8 Floor <Flr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Floor or storey within a building.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.19.2.9 UnitNumber <UnitNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a flat or dwelling within the building.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 204

5.1.19.2.10 PostBox <PstBx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Numbered box in a post office, assigned to a person or organisation, where letters are kept until called for.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 204

5.1.19.2.11 Room <Room>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Building room number.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.19.2.12 PostCode <PstCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 204

5.1.19.2.13 TownName <TwnNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.19.2.14 TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specific location name within the town.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.19.2.15 DistrictName <DstrctNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a subdivision within a country sub-division.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.19.2.16 CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a subdivision of a country such as state, region, county.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.19.2.17 Country <Ctry>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Nation with its own government.

Impacted by: C6 "Country"

Datatype: "CountryCode" on page 188

Constraints

- **Country**

  The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

5.1.19.2.18 AddressLine <AdrLine>

Presence: [0..7]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, presented in free format text.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 206

5.1.20   Remittance

5.1.20.1 Garnishment3

Definition: Provides remittance information about a payment for garnishment-related purposes.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type *<Tp>*	[1..1]			143
	CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			143
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		144
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		144
	Garnishee *<Grnshee>*	[0..1]	±		144
	GarnishmentAdministrator *<GrnshmtAdmstr>*	[0..1]	±		144
	ReferenceNumber *<RefNb>*	[0..1]	Text		145
	Date *<Dt>*	[0..1]	Date		145
	RemittedAmount *<RmtdAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	145
	FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator *<FmlyMdclInsrncInd>*	[0..1]	Indicator		145
	EmployeeTerminationIndicator *<MplyeeTermntnInd>*	[0..1]	Indicator		146

5.1.20.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of garnishment.

Type <Tp> contains the following **GarnishmentType1** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			143
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		144
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		144

5.1.20.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the garnishment.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **GarnishmentType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		144

5.1.20.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Garnishment type in a coded form.

Would suggest this to be an External Code List to contain:

GNCS   Garnishment from a third party payer for Child Support

GNDP   Garnishment from a Direct Payer for Child Support

GTPP   Garnishment from a third party payer to taxing agency.

Datatype: "ExternalGarnishmentType1Code" on page 192

5.1.20.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary identification of the type of garnishment.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the garnishment type.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.1.2 Garnishee <Grnshee>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the garnisher.

Garnishee <Grnshee> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 108 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		108
	PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		108
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		109
	CountryOfResidence *<CtryOfRes>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	109
	ContactDetails *<CtctDtls>*	[0..1]	±		110

5.1.20.1.3 GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party on the credit side of the transaction who administers the garnishment on behalf of the ultimate beneficiary.

GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 108 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		108
	PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		108
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		109
	CountryOfResidence *<CtryOfRes>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	109
	ContactDetails *<CtctDtls>*	[0..1]	±		110

5.1.20.1.4 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reference information that is specific to the agency receiving the garnishment.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.20.1.5 Date <Dt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of payment which garnishment was taken from.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.20.1.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money remitted for the referred document.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.20.1.7 FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates if the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has family medical insurance coverage available.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 202):

- *Meaning When True:* True

- *Meaning When False:* False

5.1.20.1.8 EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates if the employment of the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has been terminated.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 202):

- *Meaning When True:* True

- *Meaning When False:* False

5.1.20.2 StructuredRemittanceInformation17

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

Or	MessageElement *<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferredDocumentInformation *<RfrdDocInf>*	[0..*]			149
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			151
	CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			151
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		151
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		152
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		152
	Number *<Nb>*	[0..1]	Text		152
	RelatedDate *<RltdDt>*	[0..1]	Date		153
	LineDetails *<LineDtls>*	[0..*]			153
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..*]			154
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			155
	CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			155
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		155
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		156
	Number *<Nb>*	[0..1]	Text		156
	RelatedDate *<RltdDt>*	[0..1]	Date		156
	Description *<Desc>*	[0..1]	Text		156
	Amount *<Amt>*	[0..1]			156
	DuePayableAmount *<DuePyblAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	157
	DiscountAppliedAmount *<DscntApldAmt>*	[0..*]			158
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			158
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		158
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		158
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	158
	CreditNoteAmount *<CdtNoteAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	159
	TaxAmount *<TaxAmt>*	[0..*]			159
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			159
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		160
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		160
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	160

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason *<AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>*	[0..*]			160
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	161
	CreditDebitIndicator *<CdtDbtInd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		161
	Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]	Text		161
	AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..1]	Text		161
	RemittedAmount *<RmtdAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	162
	ReferredDocumentAmount *<RfrdDocAmt>*	[0..1]	±		162
	CreditorReferenceInformation *<CdtrRefInf>*	[0..1]	±		163
	Invoicer *<Invcr>*	[0..1]	±		164
	Invoicee *<Invcee>*	[0..1]	±		164
	TaxRemittance *<TaxRmt>*	[0..1]			165
	Creditor *<Cdtr>*	[0..1]	±		167
	Debtor *<Dbtr>*	[0..1]	±		167
	UltimateDebtor *<UltmtDbtr>*	[0..1]	±		167
	AdministrationZone *<AdmstnZone>*	[0..1]	Text		168
	ReferenceNumber *<RefNb>*	[0..1]	Text		168
	Method *<Mtd>*	[0..1]	Text		168
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount *<TtlTaxblBaseAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	168
	TotalTaxAmount *<TtlTaxAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	169
	Date *<Dt>*	[0..1]	Date		169
	SequenceNumber *<SeqNb>*	[0..1]	Quantity		169
	Record *<Rcrd>*	[0..*]			169
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	Text		170
	Category *<Ctgy>*	[0..1]	Text		170
	CategoryDetails *<CtgyDtls>*	[0..1]	Text		170
	DebtorStatus *<DbtrSts>*	[0..1]	Text		171
	CertificateIdentification *<CertId>*	[0..1]	Text		171
	FormsCode *<FrmsCd>*	[0..1]	Text		171
	Period *<Prd>*	[0..1]			171
	Year *<Yr>*	[0..1]	Year		171
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		171

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromToDate <*FrToDt*>	[0..1]	±		172
	TaxAmount <*TaxAmt*>	[0..1]			173
	Rate <*Rate*>	[0..1]	Rate		173
	TaxableBaseAmount <*TaxblBaseAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	173
	TotalAmount <*TtlAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	173
	Details <*Dtls*>	[0..*]			174
	Period <*Prd*>	[0..1]			174
	Year <*Yr*>	[0..1]	Year		174
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	FromToDate <*FrToDt*>	[0..1]	±		175
	Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	176
	AdditionalInformation <*AddtlInf*>	[0..1]	Text		176
	GarnishmentRemittance <*GrnshmtRmt*>	[0..1]	±		176
	AdditionalRemittanceInformation <*AddtlRmtInf*>	[0..3]	Text		177

5.1.20.2.1 ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides the identification and the content of the referred document.

ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf> contains the following
ReferredDocumentInformation7 elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			151
	CodeOrProprietary <*CdOrPrtry*>	[1..1]			151
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		151
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		152
	Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		152
	Number <*Nb*>	[0..1]	Text		152
	RelatedDate <*RltdDt*>	[0..1]	Date		153
	LineDetails <*LineDtls*>	[0..*]			153
	Identification <*Id*>	[1..*]			154
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			155
	CodeOrProprietary <*CdOrPrtry*>	[1..1]			155
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		155
	Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		156
	Number <*Nb*>	[0..1]	Text		156
	RelatedDate <*RltdDt*>	[0..1]	Date		156
	Description <*Desc*>	[0..1]	Text		156
	Amount <*Amt*>	[0..1]			156
	DuePayableAmount <*DuePyblAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	157
	DiscountAppliedAmount <*DscntApldAmt*>	[0..*]			158
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			158
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		158
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		158
	Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	158
	CreditNoteAmount <*CdtNoteAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	159
	TaxAmount <*TaxAmt*>	[0..*]			159
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			159
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		160
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		160
	Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	160

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			160
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	161
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		161
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		161
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		161
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	162

5.1.20.2.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document.

Type <Tp> contains the following **ReferredDocumentType4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			151
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		151
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		152
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		152

5.1.20.2.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the referred document.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **ReferredDocumentType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		151
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		152

5.1.20.2.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Document type in a coded form.

Datatype: "DocumentType6Code" on page 189

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.

CodeName	Name	Definition
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.

5.1.20.2.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.1.2 Number <Nb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date associated with the referred document.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.20.2.1.4 LineDetails <LineDtls>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide the content of the referred document line.

LineDetails <LineDtls> contains the following **DocumentLineInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..*]			154
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			155
	CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			155
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		155
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		156
	Number *<Nb>*	[0..1]	Text		156
	RelatedDate *<RltdDt>*	[0..1]	Date		156
	Description *<Desc>*	[0..1]	Text		156
	Amount *<Amt>*	[0..1]			156
	DuePayableAmount *<DuePyblAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	157
	DiscountAppliedAmount *<DscntApldAmt>*	[0..*]			158
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			158
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		158
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		158
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	158
	CreditNoteAmount *<CdtNoteAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	159
	TaxAmount *<TaxAmt>*	[0..*]			159
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			159
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		160
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		160
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	160
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason *<AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>*	[0..*]			160
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	161
	CreditDebitIndicator *<CdtDbtInd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		161
	Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]	Text		161
	AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..1]	Text		161
	RemittedAmount *<RmtdAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	162

5.1.20.2.1.4.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Provides identification of the document line.

Identification <Id> contains the following **DocumentLineIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			155
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			155
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		155
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		156
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		156
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		156

5.1.20.2.1.4.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document line identification.

Type <Tp> contains the following **DocumentLineType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			155
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		155
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		156

5.1.20.2.1.4.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the referred document line identification.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **DocumentLineType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		155

5.1.20.2.1.4.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Line identification type in a coded form.

Datatype: "ExternalDocumentLineType1Code" on page 191

5.1.20.2.1.4.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.1.4.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the reference document line identificationtype.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.1.4.1.2 Number <Nb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the type specified for the referred document line.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.1.4.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date associated with the referred document line.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.20.2.1.4.2 Description <Desc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Description associated with the document line.

Datatype: "Max2048Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.1.4.3 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the amounts of the document line.

Amount <Amt> contains the following **RemittanceAmount3** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount *<DuePyblAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	157
	DiscountAppliedAmount *<DscntApldAmt>*	[0..*]			158
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			158
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		158
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		158
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	158
	CreditNoteAmount *<CdtNoteAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	159
	TaxAmount *<TaxAmt>*	[0..*]			159
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			159
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		160
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		160
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	160
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason *<AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>*	[0..*]			160
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	161
	CreditDebitIndicator *<CdtDbtInd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		161
	Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]	Text		161
	AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..1]	Text		161
	RemittedAmount *<RmtdAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	162

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.1 DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount specified is the exact amount due and payable to the creditor.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.2 DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Amount of discount to be applied to the amount due and payable to the creditor.

DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt> contains the following **DiscountAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			158
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		158
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		158
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	158

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.2.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of the amount.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **DiscountAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		158
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		158

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

Datatype: "ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code" on page 191

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.2.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money, which has been typed.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.3 CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of a credit note.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.4 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Amount of the tax.

TaxAmount <TaxAmt> contains the following **TaxAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			159
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		160
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		160
	Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	160

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.4.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of the amount.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **TaxAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		160
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		160

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

Datatype: "ExternalTaxAmountType1Code" on page 195

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.4.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money, which has been typed.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.5 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the adjustment.

AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn> contains the following
DocumentAdjustment1 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	161
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		161
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		161
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		161

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.5.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money of the document adjustment.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.5.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 188

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.5.3 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

Datatype: "Max4Text" on page 206

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.5.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details on the document adjustment.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.20.2.1.4.3.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money remitted.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.20.2.2 ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the amounts of the referred document.

ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt> contains the following elements (see "RemittanceAmount2" on page 100 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	101
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			102
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			102
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		102
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	102
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	103
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			103
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			103
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		104
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		104
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	104
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			104
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	105
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		105
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		105
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		105
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	106

5.1.20.2.3 CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtRefInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf> contains the following elements (see "CreditorReferenceInformation2" on page 54 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			54
	CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			54
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		55
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		55
	Reference *<Ref>*	[0..1]	Text		55

5.1.20.2.4 Invoicer <Invcr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the organisation issuing the invoice, when it is different from the creditor or ultimate creditor.

Invoicer <Invcr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 108 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		108
	PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		108
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		109
	CountryOfResidence *<CtryOfRes>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	109
	ContactDetails *<CtctDtls>*	[0..1]	±		110

5.1.20.2.5 Invoicee <Invcee>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the party to whom an invoice is issued, when it is different from the debtor or ultimate debtor.

Invoicee <Invcee> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 108 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		108
	PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		108
	Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		109
	CountryOfResidence *<CtryOfRes>*	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	109
	ContactDetails *<CtctDtls>*	[0..1]	±		110

5.1.20.2.6 TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides remittance information about a payment made for tax-related purposes.

TaxRemittance <TaxRmt> contains the following **TaxData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		167
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		167
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		167
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		168
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		168
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		168
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	168
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	169
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		169
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		169
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			169
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		170
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		170
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		170
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		171
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		171
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		171
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]			171
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		171
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		171
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		172
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			173
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		173
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	173
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	173
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			174
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]			174
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		174
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		175
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	176

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..1]	Text		176

5.1.20.2.6.1 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party on the credit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains the following elements (see <u>"TaxParty1" on page 183</u> for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification *<TaxId>*	[0..1]	Text		183
	RegistrationIdentification *<RegnId>*	[0..1]	Text		183
	TaxType *<TaxTp>*	[0..1]	Text		184

5.1.20.2.6.2 Debtor <Dbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party on the debit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

Debtor <Dbtr> contains the following elements (see <u>"TaxParty2" on page 184</u> for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification *<TaxId>*	[0..1]	Text		184
	RegistrationIdentification *<RegnId>*	[0..1]	Text		184
	TaxType *<TaxTp>*	[0..1]	Text		184
	Authorisation *<Authstn>*	[0..1]			184
	Title *<Titl>*	[0..1]	Text		185
	Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		185

5.1.20.2.6.3 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the taxing authority.

UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr> contains the following elements (see "TaxParty2" on page 184 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		184
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		184
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		184
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			184
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		185
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		185

5.1.20.2.6.4 AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Territorial part of a country to which the tax payment is related.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.6.5 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax reference information that is specific to a taxing agency.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.20.2.6.6 Method <Mtd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Method used to indicate the underlying business or how the tax is paid.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.6.7 TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of money on which the tax is based.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

• **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

• **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.20.2.6.8 TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of money as result of the calculation of the tax.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.20.2.6.9 Date <Dt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date by which tax is due.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 200

5.1.20.2.6.10 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Sequential number of the tax report.

Datatype: "Number" on page 202

5.1.20.2.6.11 Record <Rcrd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Record of tax details.

Record <Rcrd> contains the following **TaxRecord3** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	Text		170
	Category <*Ctgy*>	[0..1]	Text		170
	CategoryDetails <*CtgyDtls*>	[0..1]	Text		170
	DebtorStatus <*DbtrSts*>	[0..1]	Text		171
	CertificateIdentification <*CertId*>	[0..1]	Text		171
	FormsCode <*FrmsCd*>	[0..1]	Text		171
	Period <*Prd*>	[0..1]			171
	Year <*Yr*>	[0..1]	Year		171
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		171
	FromToDate <*FrToDt*>	[0..1]	±		172
	TaxAmount <*TaxAmt*>	[0..1]			173
	Rate <*Rate*>	[0..1]	Rate		173
	TaxableBaseAmount <*TaxblBaseAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	173
	TotalAmount <*TtlAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	173
	Details <*Dtls*>	[0..*]			174
	Period <*Prd*>	[0..1]			174
	Year <*Yr*>	[0..1]	Year		174
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	FromToDate <*FrToDt*>	[0..1]	±		175
	Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	176
	AdditionalInformation <*AddtlInf*>	[0..1]	Text		176

5.1.20.2.6.11.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: High level code to identify the type of tax details.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.6.11.2 Category <Ctgy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the tax code as published by the tax authority.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.6.11.3 CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details of the category tax code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.6.11.4 DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Code provided by local authority to identify the status of the party that has drawn up the settlement document.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.6.11.5 CertificateIdentification <CertId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification number of the tax report as assigned by the taxing authority.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.6.11.6 FormsCode <FrmsCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies, in a coded form, on which template the tax report is to be provided.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.20.2.6.11.7 Period <Prd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

Period <Prd> contains the following **TaxPeriod3** elements

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year *<Yr>*	[0..1]	Year		171
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		171
	FromToDate *<FrToDt>*	[0..1]	±		172

5.1.20.2.6.11.7.1 Year <Yr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Year related to the tax payment.

Datatype: "ISOYear" on page 207

5.1.20.2.6.11.7.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the period related to the tax payment.

Datatype: "TaxRecordPeriod1Code" on page 199

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

5.1.20.2.6.11.7.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the tax report is provided.

FromToDate <FrToDt> contains the following elements (see "DatePeriod2" on page 50 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate *<FrDt>*	[1..1]	Date		50
	ToDate *<ToDt>*	[1..1]	Date		50

5.1.20.2.6.11.8 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the amount of the tax record.

TaxAmount <TaxAmt> contains the following **TaxAmount3** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Rate <*Rate*>	[0..1]	Rate		173
	TaxableBaseAmount <*TaxblBaseAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	173
	TotalAmount <*TtlAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	173
	Details <*Dtls*>	[0..*]			174
	Period <*Prd*>	[0..1]			174
	Year <*Yr*>	[0..1]	Year		174
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	FromToDate <*FrToDt*>	[0..1]	±		175
	Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	176

5.1.20.2.6.11.8.1 Rate <Rate>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Rate used to calculate the tax.

Datatype: "PercentageRate" on page 203

5.1.20.2.6.11.8.2 TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money on which the tax is based.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.20.2.6.11.8.3 TotalAmount <TtlAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount that is the result of the calculation of the tax for the record.

Impacted by: <u>C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"</u>, <u>C7 "CurrencyAmount"</u>

Datatype: <u>"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186</u>

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.20.2.6.11.8.4 Details <Dtls>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the tax period and amount.

Details <Dtls> contains the following **TaxRecordDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Period <*Prd*>	[0..1]			174
	Year <*Yr*>	[0..1]	Year		174
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	FromToDate <*FrToDt*>	[0..1]	±		175
	Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	176

5.1.20.2.6.11.8.4.1 Period <Prd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

Period <Prd> contains the following **TaxPeriod3** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <*Yr*>	[0..1]	Year		174
	Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	FromToDate <*FrToDt*>	[0..1]	±		175

5.1.20.2.6.11.8.4.1.1 Year <Yr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Year related to the tax payment.

Datatype: "ISOYear" on page 207

5.1.20.2.6.11.8.4.1.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the period related to the tax payment.

Datatype: "TaxRecordPeriod1Code" on page 199

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

5.1.20.2.6.11.8.4.1.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the tax report is provided.

FromToDate <FrToDt> contains the following elements (see "DatePeriod2" on page 50 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate *<FrDt>*	[1..1]	Date		50
	ToDate *<ToDt>*	[1..1]	Date		50

5.1.20.2.6.11.8.4.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Underlying tax amount related to the specified period.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 186

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.1.20.2.6.11.9 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the tax record.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.20.2.7 GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides remittance information about a payment for garnishment-related purposes.

GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt> contains the following elements (see "Garnishment3" on page 142 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			143
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			143
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		144
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		144
	Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		144
	GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		144
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		145
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		145
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	145
	FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		145
	EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		146

5.1.20.2.8 AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>

Presence: [0..3]

Definition: Additional information, in free text form, to complement the structured remittance information.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.20.3 RemittanceInformation21

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		177
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		177

5.1.20.3.1 Unstructured <Ustrd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in an unstructured form.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.1.20.3.2 Structured <Strd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

Structured <Strd> contains the following elements (see "StructuredRemittanceInformation17" on page 146 for details)

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferredDocumentInformation *<RfrdDocInf>*	[0..*]			149
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			151
	CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			151
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		151
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		152
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		152
	Number *<Nb>*	[0..1]	Text		152
	RelatedDate *<RltdDt>*	[0..1]	Date		153
	LineDetails *<LineDtls>*	[0..*]			153
	Identification *<Id>*	[1..*]			154
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			155
	CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			155
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		155
	Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		156
	Number *<Nb>*	[0..1]	Text		156
	RelatedDate *<RltdDt>*	[0..1]	Date		156
	Description *<Desc>*	[0..1]	Text		156
	Amount *<Amt>*	[0..1]			156
	DuePayableAmount *<DuePyblAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	157
	DiscountAppliedAmount *<DscntApldAmt>*	[0..*]			158
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			158
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		158
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		158
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	158
	CreditNoteAmount *<CdtNoteAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	159
	TaxAmount *<TaxAmt>*	[0..*]			159
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			159
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		160
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		160

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	160
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason *<AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>*	[0..*]			160
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	161
	CreditDebitIndicator *<CdtDbtInd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		161
	Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]	Text		161
	AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..1]	Text		161
	RemittedAmount *<RmtdAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	162
	ReferredDocumentAmount *<RfrdDocAmt>*	[0..1]	±		162
	CreditorReferenceInformation *<CdtrRefInf>*	[0..1]	±		163
	Invoicer *<Invcr>*	[0..1]	±		164
	Invoicee *<Invcee>*	[0..1]	±		164
	TaxRemittance *<TaxRmt>*	[0..1]			165
	Creditor *<Cdtr>*	[0..1]	±		167
	Debtor *<Dbtr>*	[0..1]	±		167
	UltimateDebtor *<UltmtDbtr>*	[0..1]	±		167
	AdministrationZone *<AdmstnZone>*	[0..1]	Text		168
	ReferenceNumber *<RefNb>*	[0..1]	Text		168
	Method *<Mtd>*	[0..1]	Text		168
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount *<TtlTaxblBaseAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	168
	TotalTaxAmount *<TtlTaxAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	169
	Date *<Dt>*	[0..1]	Date		169
	SequenceNumber *<SeqNb>*	[0..1]	Quantity		169
	Record *<Rcrd>*	[0..*]			169
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	Text		170
	Category *<Ctgy>*	[0..1]	Text		170
	CategoryDetails *<CtgyDtls>*	[0..1]	Text		170
	DebtorStatus *<DbtrSts>*	[0..1]	Text		171
	CertificateIdentification *<CertId>*	[0..1]	Text		171
	FormsCode *<FrmsCd>*	[0..1]	Text		171
	Period *<Prd>*	[0..1]			171
	Year *<Yr>*	[0..1]	Year		171

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		171
	FromToDate *<FrToDt>*	[0..1]	±		172
	TaxAmount *<TaxAmt>*	[0..1]			173
	Rate *<Rate>*	[0..1]	Rate		173
	TaxableBaseAmount *<TaxblBaseAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	173
	TotalAmount *<TtlAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	173
	Details *<Dtls>*	[0..*]			174
	Period *<Prd>*	[0..1]			174
	Year *<Yr>*	[0..1]	Year		174
	Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	FromToDate *<FrToDt>*	[0..1]	±		175
	Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	176
	AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..1]	Text		176
	GarnishmentRemittance *<GrnshmtRmt>*	[0..1]	±		176
	AdditionalRemittanceInformation *<AddtlRmtInf>*	[0..3]	Text		177

5.1.21   Status

5.1.21.1 StatusReasonInformation12

Definition: Provides information on the status reason of the transaction.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Originator *<Orgtr>*	[0..1]	±		182
	Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]			182
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		182
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		182
	AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..*]	Text		182

Constraints

- **StatusReasonRule**

  If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

```
On Condition
    /Reason/Code is within DataType <<Code>> ValidationRuleNarrative1Code
 And    /Reason is present
 And    /Reason/Code is present
```

```
Following Must be True
    /AdditionalInformation[1] Must be present
```

5.1.21.1.1 Originator <Orgtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that issues the status.

Originator <Orgtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification135" on page 108 for details)

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
	PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		108
	Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	±		109
	CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C6	109
	ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		110

5.1.21.1.2 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the status report.

Reason <Rsn> contains one of the following **StatusReason6Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		182
Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		182

5.1.21.1.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the status, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: "ExternalStatusReason1Code" on page 194

5.1.21.1.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the status, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.21.1.3 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Further details on the status reason.

Usage: Additional information can be used for several purposes such as the reporting of repaired information.

Datatype: "Max105Text" on page 204

5.1.22   System Identification

5.1.22.1 ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice

Definition: Choice of a clearing system identifier.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		183
Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		183

5.1.22.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a clearing system, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code" on page 191

5.1.22.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification code for a clearing system, that has not yet been identified in the list of clearing systems.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.23   Tax

5.1.23.1 TaxParty1

Definition: Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification *<TaxId>*	[0..1]	Text		183
	RegistrationIdentification *<RegnId>*	[0..1]	Text		183
	TaxType *<TaxTp>*	[0..1]	Text		184

5.1.23.1.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax identification number of the creditor.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.23.1.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.23.1.3 TaxType <TaxTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Type of tax payer.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.23.2 TaxParty2

Definition: Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <*TaxId*>	[0..1]	Text		184
	RegistrationIdentification <*RegnId*>	[0..1]	Text		184
	TaxType <*TaxTp*>	[0..1]	Text		184
	Authorisation <*Authstn*>	[0..1]			184
	Title <*Titl*>	[0..1]	Text		185
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		185

5.1.23.2.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax identification number of the debtor.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.23.2.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.23.2.3 TaxType <TaxTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Type of tax payer.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.23.2.4 Authorisation <Authstn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Details of the authorised tax paying party.

Authorisation <Authstn> contains the following **TaxAuthorisation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Title <*Titl*>	[0..1]	Text		185
	Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		185

5.1.23.2.4.1 Title <Titl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Title or position of debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 205

5.1.23.2.4.2 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 204

5.2   Message Datatypes

5.2.1   Amount

5.2.1.1 ActiveCurrencyAndAmount

Definition: A number of monetary units specified in an active currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

Type: Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveCurrencyCode" on page 187

Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

Constraints

• **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217

Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.2.1.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount

Definition: A number of monetary units specified in an active or a historic currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

Type: Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 187

Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.2.2   Binary

5.2.2.1 Max10KBinary

Definition: Binary data of 10K maximum.

Type: Binary

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	10240

5.2.3   CodeSet

5.2.3.1 ActiveCurrencyCode

Definition: A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

   The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

5.2.3.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode

Definition: A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

   The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

5.2.3.3 AddressType2Code

Definition: Specifies the type of address.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

5.2.3.4 ClearingChannel2Code

Definition: Specifies the clearing channel for the routing of the transaction, as part of the payment type identification.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
RTGS	RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.
RTNS	RealTimeNetSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.
MPNS	MassPaymentNetSystem	Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system.
BOOK	BookTransfer	Payment through internal book transfer.

5.2.3.5 CountryCode

Definition: Code to identify a country, a dependency, or another area of particular geopolitical interest, on the basis of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern	[A-Z]{2,2}

Constraints

- **Country**

  The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

5.2.3.6 CreditDebitCode

Definition: Specifies if an operation is an increase or a decrease.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

5.2.3.7 DocumentType3Code

Definition: Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
RADM	RemittanceAdviceMessage	Document is a remittance advice sent separately from the current transaction.
RPIN	RelatedPaymentInstruction	Document is a linked payment instruction to which the current payment instruction is related, for example, in a cover scenario.
FXDR	ForeignExchangeDealReference	Document is a pre-agreed or pre-arranged foreign exchange transaction to which the payment transaction refers.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.
SCOR	StructuredCommunicationReference	Document is a structured communication reference provided by the creditor to identify the referred transaction.

5.2.3.8 DocumentType6Code

Definition: Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.

CodeName	Name	Definition
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.

5.2.3.9 ExternalAccountIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.10 ExternalCashAccountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.11 ExternalCashClearingSystem1Code

Definition: Specifies the cash clearing system, as published in an external cash clearing system code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1

maxLength	3

5.2.3.12 ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code

Definition: Specifies the category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.13 ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	5

5.2.3.14 ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.15 ExternalDocumentLineType1Code

Definition: Specifies the document line type as published in an external document type code list.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.16 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.17 ExternalGarnishmentType1Code

Definition: Specifies the garnishment type as published in an external document type code list.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.18 ExternalLocalInstrument1Code

Definition: Specifies the external local instrument code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	35

5.2.3.19 ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code

Definition: Specifies the external mandate setup reason code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.20 ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.21 ExternalPaymentGroupStatus1Code

Definition: Specifies the status of a group of payment instructions, as published in an external payment group status code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.22 ExternalPaymentTransactionStatus1Code

Definition: Specifies the status of an individual payment instructions, as published in an external payment transaction status code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.23 ExternalPersonIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.24 ExternalProxyAccountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the external proxy account type code, as published in the proxy account type external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.25 ExternalPurpose1Code

Definition: Specifies the external purpose code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.26 ExternalServiceLevel1Code

Definition: Specifies the external service level code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.27 ExternalStatusReason1Code

Definition: Specifies the status reason, as published in an external status reason code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.28 ExternalTaxAmountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.3.29 Frequency6Code

Definition: Specifies the regularity of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

5.2.3.30 MandateClassification1Code

Definition: Specifies the type of direct debit amount, such as fixed or variable.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FIXE	Fixed	Direct debit amount is fixed.
USGB	UsageBased	Direct debit amount is based on usage.
VARI	Variable	Direct debit amount is variable.

5.2.3.31 NamePrefix2Code

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

5.2.3.32 PaymentMethod4Code

Definition: Specifies the transfer method that will be used to transfer an amount of money.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CHK	Cheque	Written order to a bank to pay a certain amount of money from one person to another person.
TRF	CreditTransfer	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer.
DD	DirectDebit	Collection of an amount of money from the debtor's bank account by the creditor. The amount of money and dates of collections may vary.
TRA	TransferAdvice	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer. An advice should be sent back to the account owner.

5.2.3.33 PreferredContactMethod1Code

Definition: Preferred method used to reach the individual contact within an organisation.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.

CodeName	Name	Definition
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.

5.2.3.34 PreferredContactMethod2Code

Definition: Preferred method used to reach the individual contact within an organisation.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.
ONLI	Online	Preferred method used to reach the contact is online.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.

5.2.3.35 Priority2Code

Definition: Specifies the priority level of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

5.2.3.36 Priority3Code

Definition: Specifies the priority level of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
URGT	Urgent	Priority level is urgent (highest priority possible).
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

5.2.3.37 SequenceType3Code

Definition: Specifies the type of the current transaction that belongs to a sequence of transactions.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FRST	First	First collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
FNAL	Final	Final collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.
RPRE	Represented	Collection used to re-present previously reversed or returned direct debit transactions.

5.2.3.38 SettlementMethod1Code

Definition: Specifies the method used to settle the credit transfer instruction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	InstructedAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructed to execute a payment instruction.
INGA	InstructingAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructing and forwarding the payment to the next party in the payment chain.
COVE	CoverMethod	Settlement is done through a cover payment.
CLRG	ClearingSystem	Settlement is done through a payment clearing system.

5.2.3.39 SettlementMethod2Code

Definition: Specifies the method used to settle the credit transfer instruction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	InstructedAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructed to execute a payment instruction.
INGA	InstructingAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructing and forwarding the payment to the next party in the payment chain.
CLRG	ClearingSystem	Settlement is done through a payment clearing system.

5.2.3.40 TaxRecordPeriod1Code

Definition: Specifies the period related to the tax payment.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

5.2.4   Date

5.2.4.1 ISODate

Definition: A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar year expressed in the YYYY-MM-DD format. This representation is defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Type: Date

5.2.5   DateTime

5.2.5.1 ISODateTime

Definition: A particular point in the progression of time defined by a mandatory date and a mandatory time component, expressed in either UTC time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

Type: DateTime

5.2.6   IdentifierSet

5.2.6.1 AnyBICDec2014Identifier

Definition: Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: SWIFT; AnyBICIdentifier

Format

pattern   [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

Constraints

• **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

5.2.6.2 BICFIDec2014Identifier

Definition: Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: SWIFT; BICIdentifier

Format

pattern   [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

Constraints

• **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

5.2.6.3 IBAN2007Identifier

Definition: The International Bank Account Number is a code used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer at a financial institution as described in the 2007 edition of the ISO 13616 standard "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" and replaced by the more recent edition of the standard.

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: National Banking Association; International Bank Account Number (ISO 13616)

Format

pattern   [A-Z]{2,2}[0-9]{2,2}[a-zA-Z0-9]{1,30}

Constraints

• **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

5.2.6.4 LEIIdentifier

Definition: Legal Entity Identifier is a code allocated to a party as described in ISO 17442 "Financial Services - Legal Entity Identifier (LEI)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: Global LEI System; LEIIdentifier

Format

pattern	[A-Z0-9]{18,18}[0-9]{2,2}

5.2.6.5 UUIDv4Identifier

Definition: Universally Unique IDentifier (UUID) version 4, as described in IETC RFC 4122 "Universally Unique IDentifier (UUID) URN Namespace".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: RFC4122; UUIDv4

Format

pattern	[a-f0-9]{8}-[a-f0-9]{4}-4[a-f0-9]{3}-[89ab][a-f0-9]{3}-[a-f0-9]{12}

5.2.7   Indicator

5.2.7.1 TrueFalseIndicator

Definition: A flag indicating a True or False value.

Type: Indicator

Meaning When True: True

Meaning When False: False

5.2.8   Quantity

5.2.8.1 DecimalNumber

Definition: Number of objects represented as a decimal number, for example 0.75 or 45.6.

Type: Quantity

Format

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	17

5.2.8.2 Number

Definition: Number of objects represented as an integer.

Type: Quantity

Format

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	0

5.2.9   Rate

5.2.9.1 PercentageRate

Definition: Rate expressed as a percentage, that is, in hundredths, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 of a percent, and 7.0 is 7%.

Type: Rate

Format

totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10
baseValue	100.0

5.2.10   Text

5.2.10.1 Exact2NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 2 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[0-9]{2}

5.2.10.2 Exact4AlphaNumericText

Definition: Specifies an alphanumeric string with a length of 4 characters.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[a-zA-Z0-9]{4}

5.2.10.3 Max1000Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 1000 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	1000

5.2.10.4 Max1025Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 1025 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	1025

5.2.10.5 Max105Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 105 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	105

5.2.10.6 Max128Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 128 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	128

5.2.10.7 Max140Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 140 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	140

5.2.10.8 Max15NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 15 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[0-9]{1,15}

5.2.10.9 Max16Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 16 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	16

5.2.10.10 Max2048Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 2048 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	2048

5.2.10.11 Max256Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 256 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	256

5.2.10.12 Max34Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 34 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	34

5.2.10.13 Max350Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 350 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	350

5.2.10.14 Max35Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	35

5.2.10.15 Max4AlphaNumericText

Definition: Specifies an alphanumeric string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4
pattern	[a-zA-Z0-9]{1,4}

5.2.10.16 Max4Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

5.2.10.17 Max70Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 70characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	70

5.2.10.18 PhoneNumber

Definition: The collection of information which identifies a specific phone or FAX number as defined by telecom services.

It consists of a "+" followed by the country code (from 1 to 3 characters) then a "-" and finally, any combination of numbers, "(", ")", "+" and "-" (up to 30 characters).

Type: Text

Format

pattern	\+[0-9]{1,3}-[0-9()+\-]{1,30}

5.2.11   Time

5.2.11.1 ISOTime

Definition: A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar day expressed in either UTC time format (hh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (hh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (hh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

Type: Time

5.2.12   Year

5.2.12.1 ISOYear

Definition: Year represented by YYYY (ISO 8601).

Type: Year